WELCOME!

the home page of the Phaser 600 Color Printer User Manual.

Tips on using this guide, or go immediately to the Contents.

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

sing this guide

vigation buttons in Acrobat Reader to move through the document:

1 2 3 4 5 6

the **First Page** and **Last Page** buttons. These buttons move to the page of a document.

the **Previous Page** and **Next Page** buttons. These buttons move ent backward or forward one page at a time.

the **Go Back** and **Go Forward** buttons. These buttons let you r steps through a document, moving to each page or view in the d.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

sults, use the Adobe Acrobat Reader version 2.1 to read this guide.
of the Acrobat Reader is supplied on your printer's CD-ROM.

e page numbers in the Contents on the following pages to open the
want to read.

ck on the page numbers following keywords in the Index to open
terest.

so use the Bookmarks provided by the Acrobat Reader to navigate
s guide. If the Bookmarks are not already displayed at the left of the
lect **Bookmarks and Page** from the **View** menu.

difficultly reading any small type or seeing the details in any of the
, you can use the Acrobat Reader's Magnification feature. Select a
on value from the **Magnification** field in the **Status bar** at the
he window.

hrases in this manual in blue underlined type are hypertext links;
link to go immediately to information on that topic.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONTENTS

GETTING SET UP 9

At a glance 10
Setting up the printer 11
- What you get with your printer 11
- Registering your printer 14
- Unpacking instructions 15
- Moving the printer to its operating location 16
- Removing adhesive tape and cable tie 17
- Removing the transit restraint 18
- Removing the shipping blocks 21
- Attaching the ink loader 23
- Loading the ink 24
- Attaching the output bin 26
- Attaching the Quick Reference Guide 27

Connecting the printer 28
- Printer ports 28
- Adjust the leveling legs and lock the wheels 32
- Turning on the printer 33

Selecting a language for the front panel 37
Installing the starter paper roll 39
- Loading the paper roll 40
- Feeding roll paper 43

Software installation 46
- Overview for all PC and Macintosh platforms 47

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

48
ver to install? 49
asy Install? 50
0
river to install? 70
asy Install? 71
78

PRINTING BASICS 80

Printing overview 81
Printing from a PC 82
- Print features quick reference: Windows printer drivers 83
- Using the Microsoft PostScript driver with Windows 95 101
- Using the AdobePS 4 driver with Windows 95 105
- Using the Tektronix printer driver for Windows 3.1 109
- Using the Adobe PostScript driver for Windows 3.1 115
- Using the Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51 PostScript driver 118
- Using the Windows NT 4.0 PostScript driver 119

Printing from a Macintosh 124
- Print features quick reference: Macintosh printer drivers 125
- Using the Phaser 600 driver 138
- Using the Adobe PSPrinter driver 139
- Using the Apple LaserWriter 8.x driver 140
- Using the Phaser 600 GX driver 141

Printing from a workstation 143
- Overview 143
- UNIX workstations 145
- VMS workstations 147
- For more information 148

Printing from specific applications 149
- General hints and tips 149

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

150
n 151
154
155

size 157
rea 158
a, and margins 161
69
173

g cut-sheet media 176
79
tScript, HP-GL 181

(PostScript) 183
Features option 184
185
onts 187
ndows 189
ers 190

PRINTING: BEYOND THE BASICS 193

Working with color 195
Color corrections — making the best selection 197
- Deciding which color correction to use 200
- Color correction descriptions 201
- Special considerations 215

Printing and using the color sampler charts 219
Special printing features 221
- Fusing Mode / Media Fusing 222
- Advance Media 224
- Cut Media 226
- Mirror Print 228
- Page Centering 229
- Page Rotation 230
- Image Smoothing 232
- Fast Preview 234
- Print Preview 235
- Color Control Strip 238
- Reprint 240
- Custom page sizes 241

Phaser Copystation 242
- Requirements and suggested memory configuration 243
- Connecting the Copystation 244
- Setting the print quantity 245
- Scaling images from the Copystation 246
- Media size interactions 248

Laminating your Phaser 600 prints 251
- Tips on laminating prints 252

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OR SAMPLER CHARTS 253
256
257
nual feed media 258
media 259
sh 260
261
ons 262
harts 264
269
ons 270
harts 272

COLOR MATCHING 275
Select your computer type 276
Using ColorSync on a Macintosh 277
Using host color correction in Windows 95 282

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

® COLOR FILES 285

287
tosh files 288
es 289
lor templates 290
h templates 291
y files 297
Color sampler chart 301
pages from Acrobat 302
hart 309
from an application 313
lors from a Macintosh

Colors from a
ation 316

USING THE PHASERPRINT™ PLUG-IN FOR PHOTOSHOP 318

Overview 319
Compatibility 320
Installing the PhaserPrint plug-in for Photoshop 321
    Installing the plug-in for Macintosh 322
    Installing the plug-in for Windows 323
Using the plug-in 325
    Starting the PhaserPrint plug-in 326
    Selecting options in the PhaserPrint dialog box 328

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

600 GX DRIVER 364
367
0 GX printer driver 368
ter 369
op printers 371
printer 372
menu 373
nter 382
ter 383
v GX applications 384
Draw GX applications 388
390
X 391

PRINTING FROM DOS 393
Setting up ports 395
Setting up the parallel port 396
Setting up optional interface ports 397
Printing from DOS 398
Using color corrections 399
Using a Tektronix driver 400
Using a non-Tektronix driver 401

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IX AND VMS
02
kstations 405
stations 407
ware 408
files 409
00 printer's CD-ROM 410
11
diskette on a workstation 414
.0.x and 5 415
2.3 417
4.1.3 420
unix.tar 421

USING PRINTER UTILITIES 424
Installing the utility files 426
Installing the Macintosh utility files from the printer's CD-ROM 427
Installing the PC utility files 428
Downloading files from the Tektronix World Wide Web site 429
Downloading files from the Tektronix ftp server 430
Downloading files to the printer 432
Downloading files from a Macintosh 433
Downloading files from a PC 438
Changing the printer's name 442
Changing the printer's name from a Macintosh 443
Changing the printer's name from a PC 445
Resetting the printer 447
Resetting the printer from a Macintosh 448
Resetting the printer from a PC 450
Using the color rendering intents 451
Descriptions 451
Selecting 456
Enabling and disabling job pipelining 459
Enable/disable job pipelining from a Macintosh 460
Enable/disable job pipelining from a PC 462
Modifying the Advance Media default 463
Modifying Advance Media from a Macintosh 464
Modifying Advance Media from a PC 466
Setting page offset 467
Setting page offset from a Macintosh 468
Setting page offset from a PC 470
Adding Control-D characters to PC files 471

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

serial port 473

files are described in other

USING SCSI HARD DISKS 480

SCSI peripheral devices 482
Selecting a SCSI hard disk 483
Ordering information 484
Connecting a SCSI hard disk 485
- Required items 486
- Important guidelines 487
- Connecting one disk 490
- Connecting multiple disks 491

Formatting a SCSI hard disk 493
Initializing a formatted SCSI hard disk 497
Enabling and disabling SysStart Job execution 500

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

R'S PARALLEL PORT 505
7
porting 508
510

USING DIFFERENT PRINTER LANGUAGE MODES 513
Installing the files 516
Setting PostScript and HP-GL job and wait timeouts 517
Changing the printer's language mode 522
Printing PostScript files 524
Printing HP-GL files 525
Enabling automatic language selection 526
Testing printer language mode changes 527
Testing HP-GL mode 528
Testing PostScript mode 529
Setting default HP-GL pen colors 530

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PRINTER 535

per guides 540
42

45
and paper clamp 546

xit rollers 553

ead 567
569
s Empty Waste Bin 570
printer 571
the printer 573

TROUBLESHOOTING 580
If you need help 581
Downloading files from the Tektronix Color Printer Information Server 583
Using the automated fax systems 585
Use HAL in the U.S.A. and Canada 586
Use EuroHAL in Europe 588
Front panel messages 592
Symptoms and solutions 596
Diagnostic tools 596
Maintaining print quality 597
Printing hints 618
Improving print speed 620
Relative port speed 621
Fastest print time 622
Printing bitmapped images 624
PostScript printing errors 630
Using a PostScript error handler 632
Fixing timeout problems in Windows 638
Printed colors are not what you expected 642
In general 642
Printing PANTONE Colors 644
Blue colors look too purple 645
Using the Tektronix halftone screens 646
Selecting page sizes in Windows applications 650
Fonts printing incorrectly from Windows 653
Sharing the printer on a network 655
If the LaserWriter Utility does not work (AppleTalk) 657

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

58
660
even though it is disabled 669
670

m 673
6

USING THE FRONT PANEL 681

Front panel 683
- Front panel overview 684
- Front panel indicators 685
- Front panel buttons 686
- Two-line display 689
- Printer information 690
- Front panel menu map 691
- Pause menu 693

Help Pages overview 695
Printing the front panel menu map 696
- Printing the menu map from the front panel 697
- Printing the menu map with PhaserLink software 698

Printing the configuration page 699
- Printing the configuration page from the front panel 700
- Printing the configuration page with a downloadable utility file 701
- Printing the configuration page with PhaserLink software 705

Printing the startup page 706
- Printing the startup page from the front panel 707
- Printing the startup page with a downloadable utility file 708
- Printing the startup page with PhaserLink software 712

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the startup page 713
ling the startup page
714
ling the startup page with a
file 716
ling the startup page with
719
front panel menus 720

ORDERING INFORMATION 726

Tektronix Printer and Tektronix Supplies:
Made For Each Other® 727
Customizing your printer 728
Ordering printer supplies 729
Ordering Interface cables and adapters 732
Expanding your printing system 734
Upgrade kits 735
Extended Features upgrade 736
Memory upgrade 738
PhaserShare network cards 740
Phaser Copystation 741
PhaserPrint 742
PhaserSym 743
SCSI hard disk 744

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RMATION 745

magnetic Compatibility)
747
ty (for 220-230 VAC

r 100-120 VAC equipment) 750
eets 752

762
765
766

INDEX 769

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INTRODUCTION

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

0 Wide-Format Color Printer is a Tektronix solid-ink printer that is
ng brilliant colors on a variety of media: paper, clear and white
gn vinyl, image-transfer film, newsprint, and canvas, to name a few.
pable of printing on sheet-fed media, in a variety of sizes up to
size (36 x 48 inches), as well as roll-fed media for printing posters,
nd signage.

guration. In its standard configuration, the printer provides
mory, a total of 17 fonts, support for PhaserMatch™ custom
profiler, and PhaserLink™, Tektronix' online control of printer features
rinter information through a standard web browser. Additional
ytes or 32 Mbytes) for improved performance is optionally available.

ures option. The Extended Features option adds 22 fonts (for a
support for the Phaser Copystation, **Print Preview** and **Reprint**
onal memory (16 Mbytes or 32 Mbytes) for improved performance is
ble.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Phaser 600 printer's features include:

at

g

IP (Raster Image Processor)

proprietary ColorStix® ink sticks

high-capacity ink loader

ibility and independence

™ Dynamic Correction
exclusive color-control technology makes it easy to print the
want.

tch™ application
g custom color profiles.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nting features that make your job easier:

t, accessible from the printer's front panel, allows you to reprint ously printed PostScript image at a different scale and copy Available with the Extended Features option.

review is a driver-selectable option that lets you preview an by printing it at a reduced scale, which takes less time and than printing a full-scale image. Available with the Extended es option.

onnect

nal parallel port with plug-and-play support; PhaserShare™ ide optional network interfaces for the following:

et	(EtherTalk, Novell NetWare, and TCP/IP)
Ring	(TokenTalk, Novell NetWare, and TCP/IP)

lk and serial

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

k™ software — printer control and information access

k software provides a breakthrough in printer control and
n access. Rather than use vendor-proprietary, printer-specific,
rm-specific management utilities, PhaserLink software provides
on using HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol, the basis for World
browsers). This allows you to use a standard web browser to
r status, control printer configuration, and link to online
ation via the World Wide Web.

erLink software, the printer must be connected to a network running
er to PhaserShare network cards for ordering information.

-Gbyte disk drive

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

city

lard configuration, the printer Color Printer has 17 resident fonts; additionally, it accepts Adobe Type 1, Type 3, and downloadable fonts. For additional font storage, the printer n internal 1-Gbyte SCSI (Small Computer System Interface) disk ell as a SCSI port that allows you to attach an external hard disk.

xtended Features option, the printer has a total of 39 resident fonts.

opystation

r Copystation accessory enables your printer to be used as a er; you can scale an image to automatically fit the media that is he printer, up to Architectural E-size (36 x 48 inches). Requires ed Features option. Refer to Extended Features upgrade for formation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

on roadmap

es information on the Phaser 600 printer in several ways:

(This manual); includes information on setting up and using the printer:

- Hardware and software set up
- Selecting print features in a driver
- Caring for your printer
- Troubleshooting

Designed for handy access of the information you need at the printer:

- Supplies information
- Loading media and ink
- Cleaning procedures
- Troubleshooting
- Online access information

Contain printer drivers, printer description files, color sampler charts, and utility files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Contains the contents of this user manual, the Adobe® Acrobat® Reader, and supplemental information in Acrobat (PDF) format:

- Using the printer's downloadable utility files
- Printing HP-GL files
- Printing from workstations
- Using PANTONE Colors

For instructions on installing and using the Adobe Acrobat Reader to view PDF files, refer to the *README* files on the CD-ROM.

If you have access to the Internet, you can view documentation topics and answers to Frequently Asked Questions available at Tektronix' web site:

`http://www.tek.com/Color_Printers/userdoc/introduction.html`

er Contains information on using the PhaserMatch software to create custom color profiles.

Contains complete information on setting up and using the PhaserShare ports.

on Includes information for setting up and using the copystation with your printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GETTING SET UP

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ce

ur printer involves these tasks:

g the printer

aser 600 Quick Start Instructions to unpack the printer and remove shipping pallet. The *Quick Start Instructions* are attached to the top e printer.

the printer

he transit restraint, attaching the ink loader, loading the ink, e output bin, attaching the *Quick Reference Guide*, and, if installing the optional Phaser Copystation.

g power and interface cables

the default language for the front panel, if applicable

media

printer software on your computer

Printer Software diskettes or CD-ROM to install the printer software PDs, and utility files).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

p the printer

et with your printer

its accessories are shipped in a single box on a pallet. If you
onal Phaser Copystation, it is shipped separately.

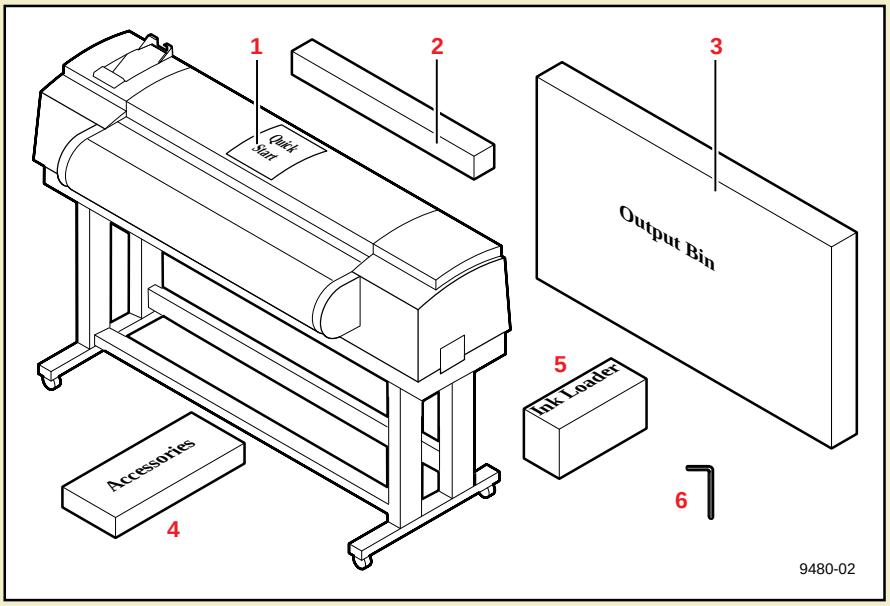
ms are
e printer:

Instructions

of Tektronix
hite Bond

s box
lescribed on
ge)

ch



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

box contents

) *Color Printer Quick Guide*

) *User Manual*

) CD-ROM and diskettes

n card and license

haserShare manuals
es

apter

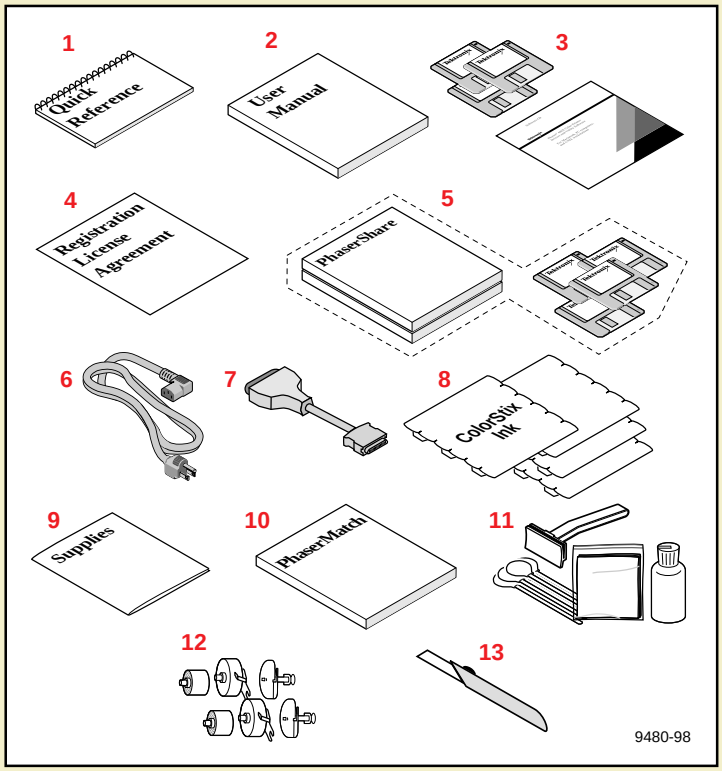
ink sticks

formation sheet

ch manual

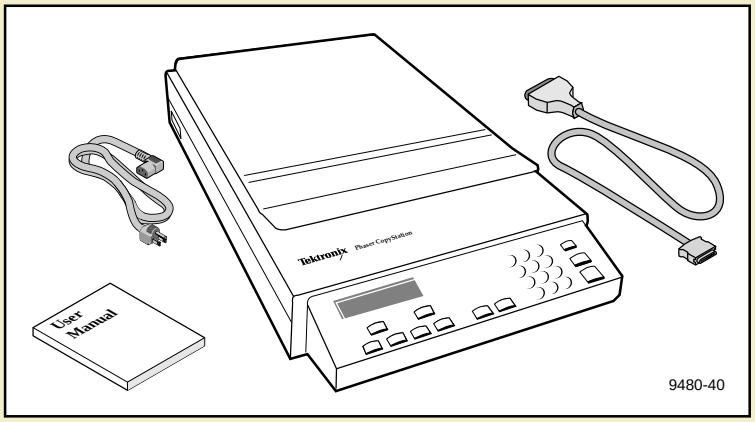
t

ng knife



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ser Copystation accessory



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

your printer

stomer registration card that is appropriate for you (U.S. or
al versions).

card and mail it.

our printer with Tektronix, you are validating the product warranty
at you will be sent information about upgrades, service, and
t becomes available.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

instructions

Color Printer Quick-Start Instructions describes how to remove the hipping pallet and prepare it for setup. It is an overview of the on for experienced users. For detailed instructions, refer to the es in this user manual.

king material in case you need to move or ship the printer.

already removed the printer from its shipping pallet, follow the e *Quick Start Installation* booklet before continuing with the described in this chapter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

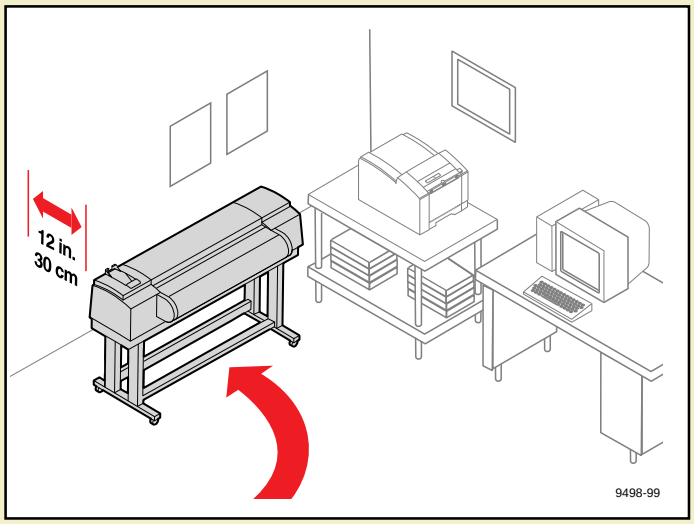
printer to its operating location

he printer from the
you can wheel it to its
on. When doing so,
delines:

e printer, make sure that
s are unlocked (the
er should be *up*).

s on the printer are
or rolling on smooth,
aces.

that you have access to
the printer while you are
o.



m (12 in.) from the wall to accommodate the ink loader.

e possibility of damage to the ink loader, position the rear of the printer
ll, rather than an aisleway.

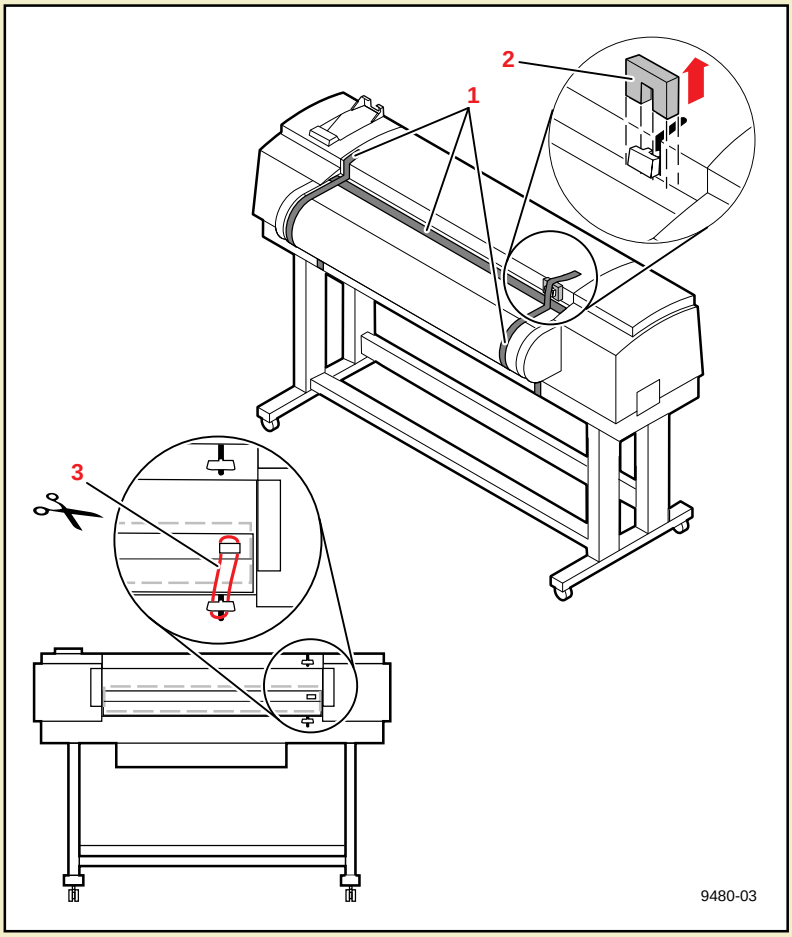
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

dhesive tape
e

e adhesive tape
o cover.

e styrofoam block
o cover latch.

move the cable tie
it cover latch.



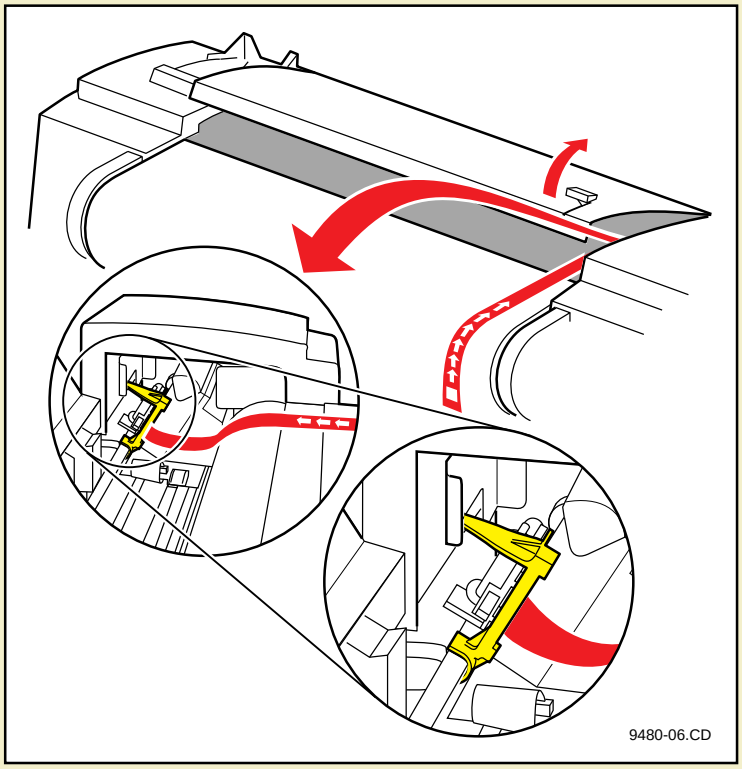
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

he transit

estraint must be removed
g on the power;
u will damage the

e top cover, lift the latch
t the cover to an
sition.

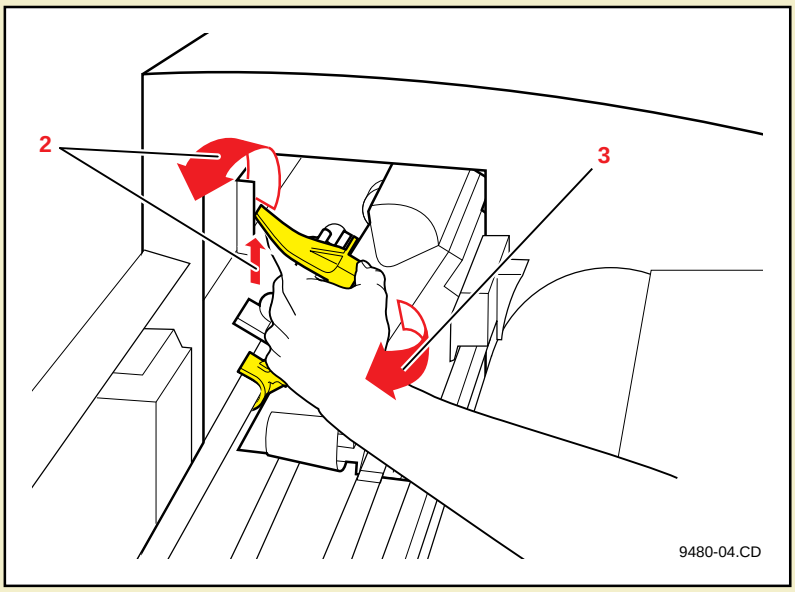
transit restraint
o the red warning
otects the printhead
oment. It is visible
he far right of the



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

left hand, grasp
estraint, as
e your index
t the end of the
er the metal plate.

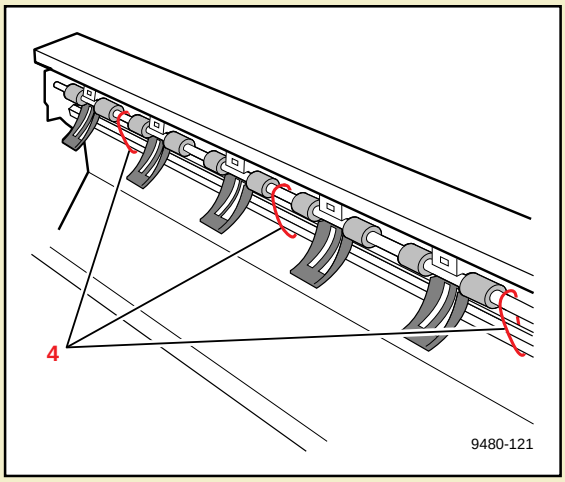
restraint **toward**
ase it from the
ve the restraint for



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

move the three cable ties that
rollers.

op cover, making sure that the
ssed down.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

he shipping blocks

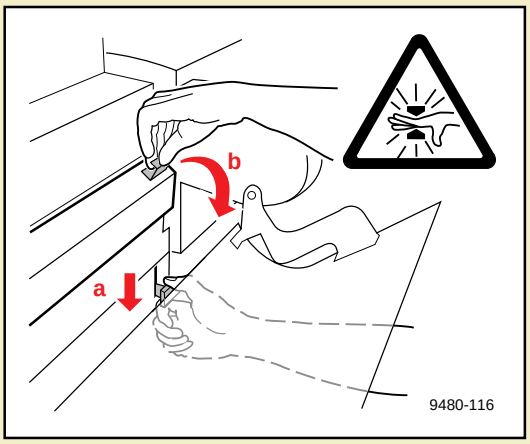
N

g blocks inside the exit cover must be removed before turning on the
wise you will damage the printer.

xit cover:

own on the latch.

e exit cover handle to
he cover down.



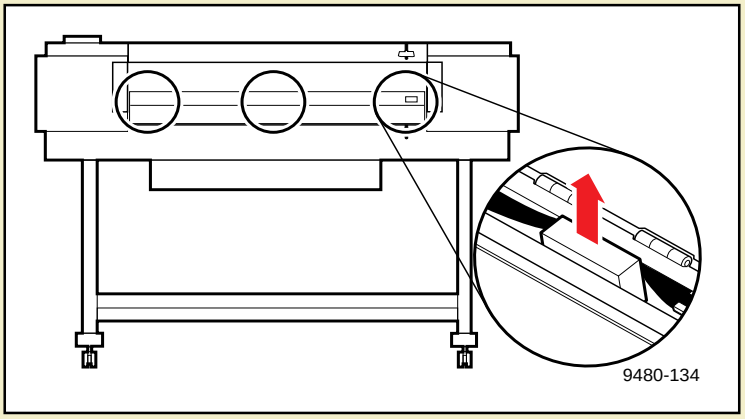
N G

ng the exit cover, be careful not to pinch your hand between the paper
d the exit cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e blocks.

xit cover.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

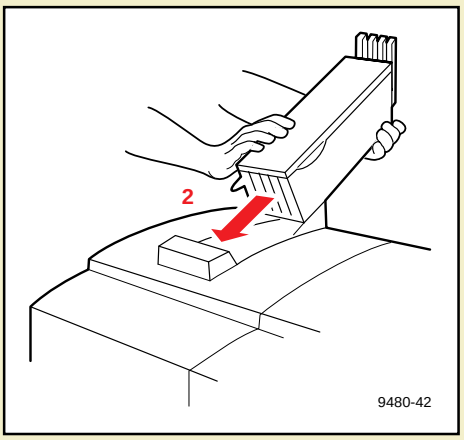
ne ink loader

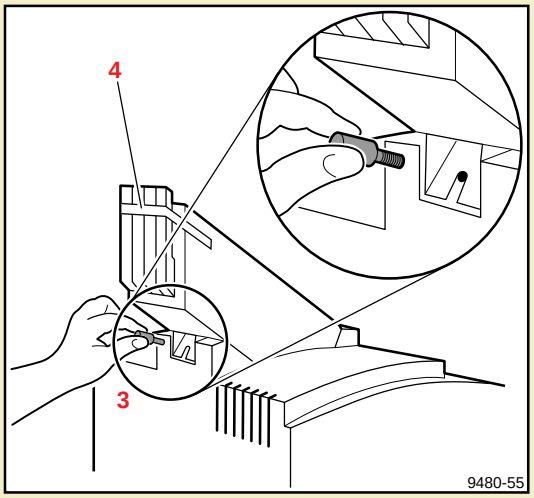
e ink loader and the screw from
ging.

k loader into the printer as shown.

crew into the opening (on the rear
ink loader and printer) to secure
der to the printer; tighten the screw
o tools are necessary.

e adhesive tape that secures the
.

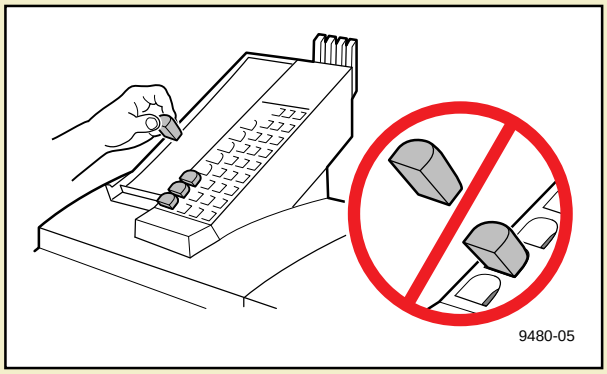




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e ink

e ColorStix ink sticks
ackaging by peeling off
cover.



nk loader cover.

ColorStix ink sticks into
riate holes for each
n color ink stick is
haped to make ink
sy. Load the ink sticks from the bottom of the ink loader to the top.

N

he ink stick in each slot; otherwise the ink sticks might jam and the cover
e.

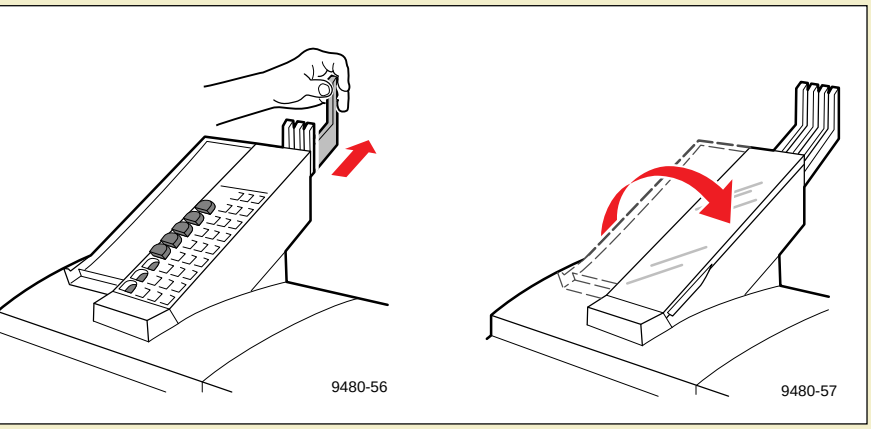
more than eight ink sticks of any color at one time.

he ink sticks you will immediately use; exposure to dust and overhandling
n ink jam.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

back each ink's slider to release the ink sticks into the printer.

nk loader cover.



at the ink loader cover is completely closed; otherwise, the printer will
.

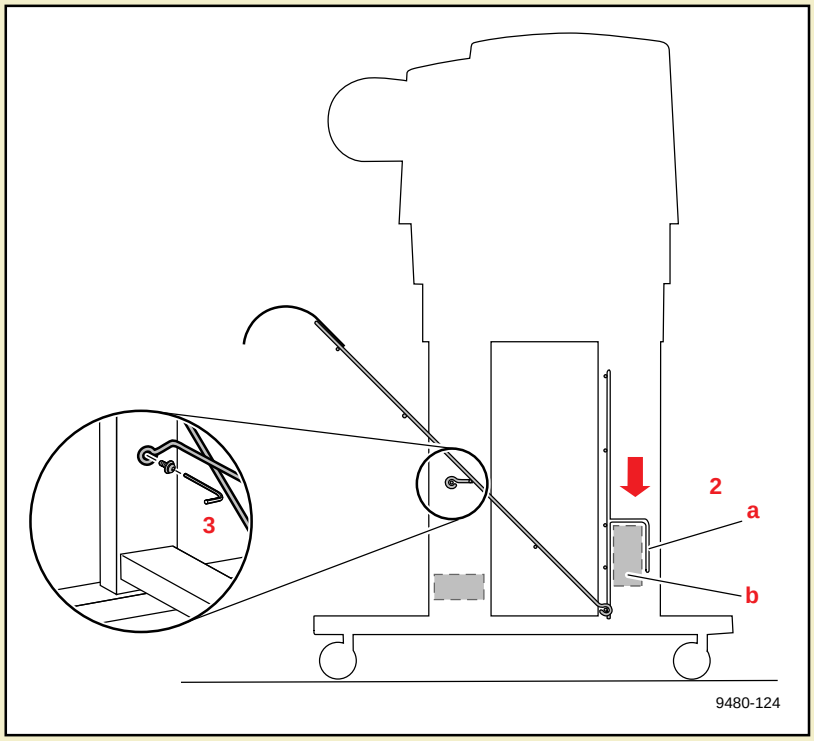
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ne output bin

e output bin
cking box.
e the small
that contains
nd an Allen

tput bin
s joint, hook
nd (**a**) over
pright) rail
rinter.

penings of
d of the
with the
n the front
printer. Insert
he opening on
eg; tighten them with the Allen wrench.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

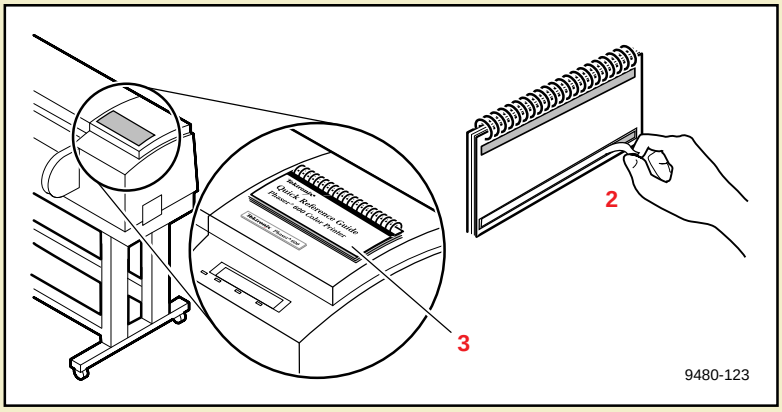
ne Quick Reference Guide

Quick Reference Guide is designed to attach to the printer above

e reference guide from the accessories box.

acking from the double-sided tape.

ooklet onto the top right side of the printer, above the front panel.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng the printer

nter connections **before** you turn on the printer.

s

ipped with a SCSI port and parallel port on the printer's rear panel. printer can support one optional PhaserShare™ network card. All rk protocols are simultaneously active. The printer accepts print ome, first-served basis.

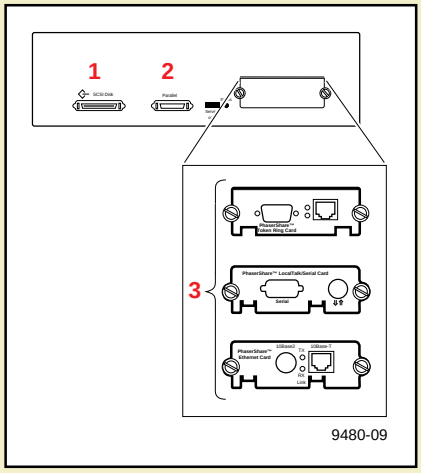
g Interface cables and adapters about ordering cables for connecting

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

dard)
cting these optional peripheral

r Copystation To set up and t the Phaser Copystation to your refer to Chapter 2 of the *Phaser ation User Manual*. Required SCSI bers are **5** and **6**. Refer to Phaser ation for ordering information.

al SCSI hard disk Provides nal storage for downloadable fonts nter has an internal 1-Gbyte SCSI sk). You can connect one or more xternal hard disks to the printer; le SCSI ID numbers are **0**, **1**, **2**, **3**.

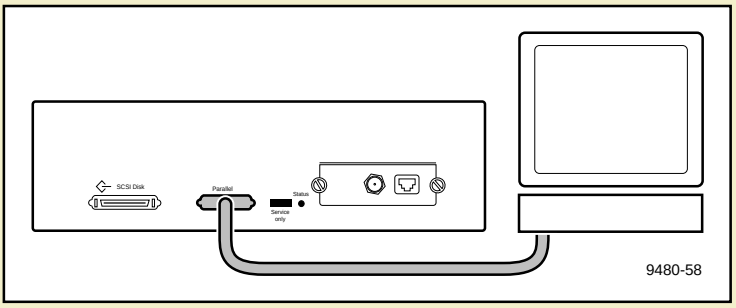


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tandard)
supports a standard (uni-directional) parallel port. The port can
for bi-directional communications using downloadable utility files
on the printer's CD-ROM, diskettes, or from your World Wide Web

high-density bi-directional parallel cable, available from most
ter cable vendors; or order a 36-pin high-density printer to
DSUB PC cable from Tektronix (order number: 012-1468-00).
ise, you can use a 36-pin to 36-pin parallel cable and the
adapter supplied with the printer.

ct a parallel interface cable to your computer and to the printer's
port:



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

are card (*optional)*
accepts one of the following:

Share Ethernet card supporting Novell NetWare, EtherTalk,
Telnet and FTP protocols.

Share Token Ring card supporting Novell NetWare, TCP/IP,
alk, Telnet and FTP protocols.

Share LocalTalk/serial card.

rShare Network Cards and Software System Administrator
ntains all the information necessary for configuring and using
al network interfaces. Refer to PhaserShare network cards for
formation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

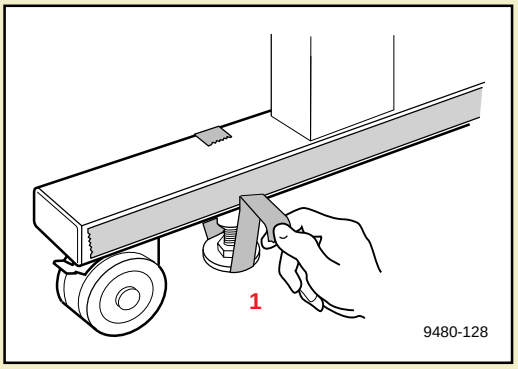
eveling legs and lock the wheels

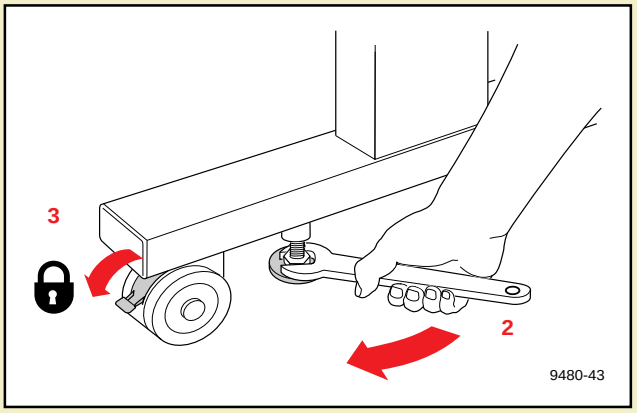
nt that the printer be set up
e surface for the best print

e adhesive tape that protects
legs and the bottom of the

e four leveling legs under
use a small, adjustable
urn the nut on each leg to the
ght. If the floor is a smooth,
ed surface, the leveling legs
inter from sliding.

nt casters by pressing down
ing lever. If the floor is a
urface, the casters alone
inter steady.





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the printer

ng on the power to the printer, make sure that you have removed all
terial from inside the printer; otherwise, you can damage the printer.
ng the transit restraint, Removing the shipping blocks, and Removing adhesive
le tie.

it restraint: (printhead) inside the printer's top cover.

ties: inside the printer's top cover.

ping blocks: (fuser) inside the exit cover.

hat you have attached the ink loader to the printer and that its cover is
rwise, the printer will not start up.

our printer from a power surge, make sure that the power switch on the
he **off** position before plugging in the cord. You can also use a surge
t is designed for computer equipment.

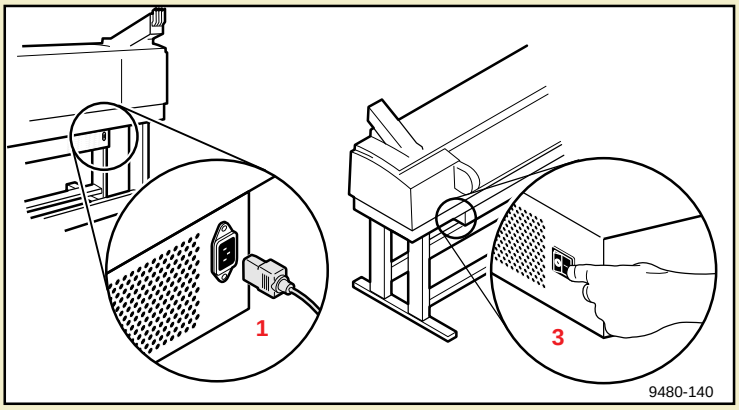
hat you use the power cord that is shipped with the printer. If you need a new
contact your local Tektronix dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ower cord into the
into a grounded

power to any
you have
(i.e., an external
r the Phaser
n).

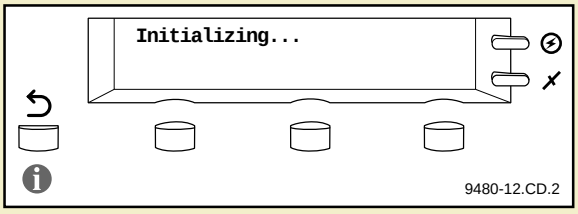
ute, then turn on the



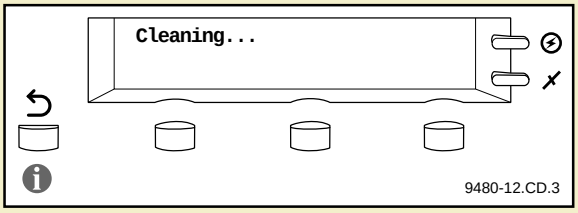
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ns at power-up

s indicators (power ⏻ and error ✗) on the printer's front panel
y. Messages appear in the display panel (LCD) as the printer
gh a series of self-tests.



lizing, the printer makes various mechanical sounds; the front
lays this message as it performs an automatic head cleaning
:



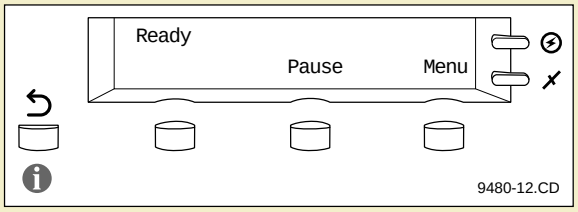
s about 10-12 minutes to warm up and complete the self-tests
he amount of memory installed).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

memory includes a startup page that is disabled by default. You can tartup page using either the front panel menu or a software utility file the CD-ROM or World Wide Web. Refer to Enabling and disabling the for details.

nter is ready for operation

-up sequence is complete, the green indicator is on steady (not d indicator is off, and the front panel displays this message:



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a language for the front panel

appear in the front panel window are in English. To change the nch, German, Spanish, Italian, or Japanese, follow these steps.

printer is on and the **Ready** message appears, press and release utton (the button labels appear in the front panel display, above sponding button). You see this message:

```
Help Pages
<---    --->   Menu
```

he left arrow button (**<---**) scrolls backward through the pressing the right arrow button (**--->**) scrolls forward through ons; pressing **Menu** enters the currently displayed menu.

eft (**<---**) or right (**--->**) arrow buttons, scroll through the until you see this message:

```
Language
<---    --->   Menu
```


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

enu button to enter the language selection menu. You see this

```
Language:English*
<---    --->   Select
```

asterisk (*****) indicates the currently selected language.

ght arrow button until the display shows the language you want selections:

```
Language:English
Language:Español
Language:Français
Language:Deutsch
Language:Italiano
Language:(Japanese)
```

ect to choose the language. Press the ↩ button until **Ready** is n the selected language.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the starter paper roll

owing instructions for loading the starter paper roll:

e paper roll

l paper

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

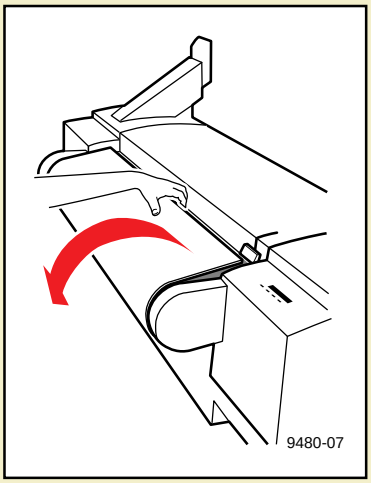
e paper roll

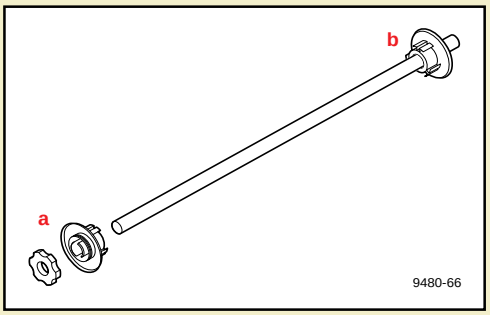
aper roll cover.

er roll holder out of the printer. Notice nd of the holder is unique:

side of the holder (closest to the ink has a removable plastic nut and .

nt side of the holder (closest to the anel) has a fixed endcap.



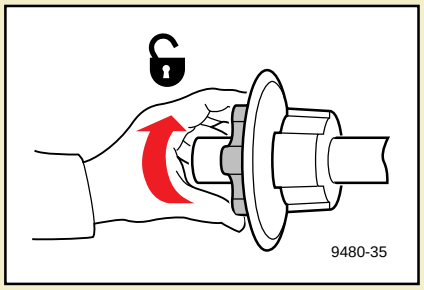


s are set up for media rolls with a ore; if you are using media on a two-inch dcaps can be adjusted. Refer to Using a nedia roll: removing the core adapter for

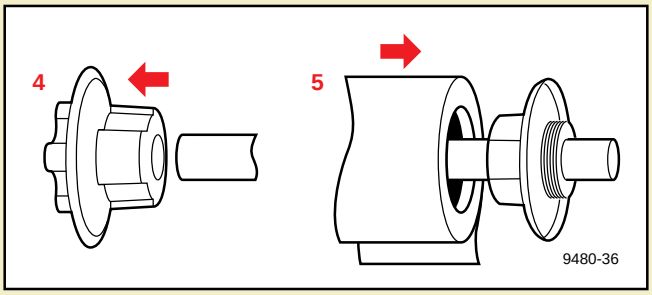
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

plastic nut by turning it
dcap slides freely.

movable endcap from the



aper roll onto the shaft
that the leading edge of
comes off the roll from
shown); center the roll
ed endcap.



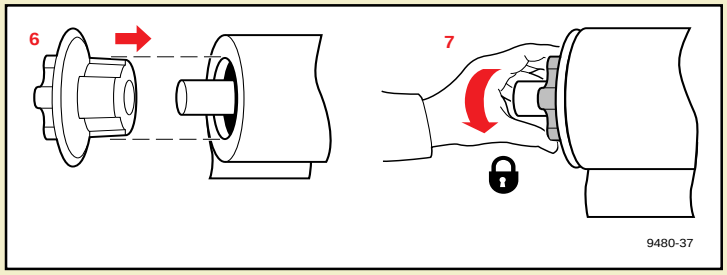
the paper roll onto the shaft;
drop onto the shaft or it can
fixed endcap.

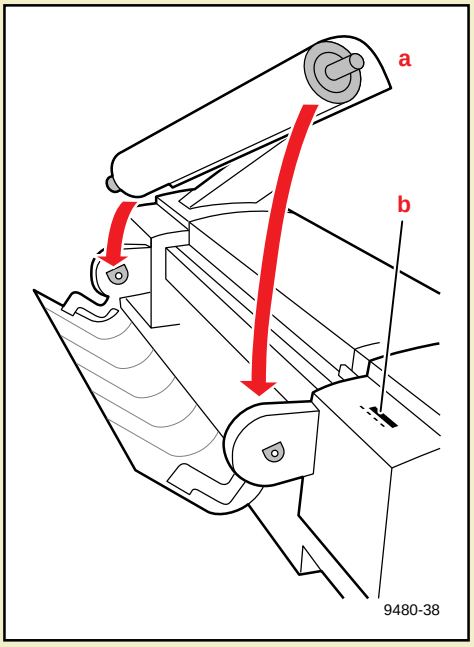
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e removable endcap; it
he core of the

plastic nut to secure
.

paper roll holder into
as shown, with the
a) closest to the front

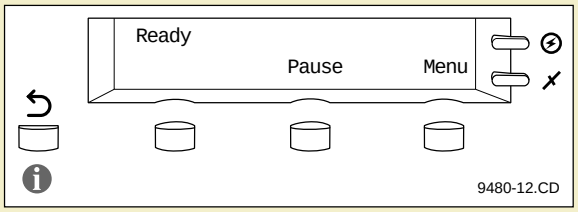




Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

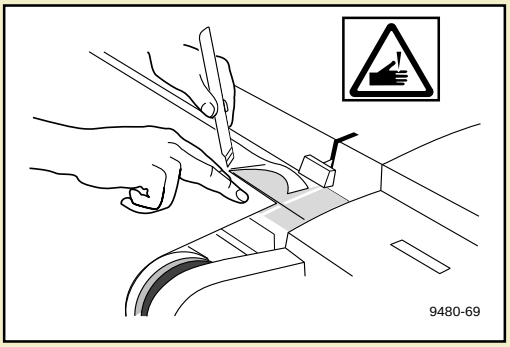
l paper

rinter is in the Ready state, the front panel displays this message:



that the paper's leading edge is straight and smooth.

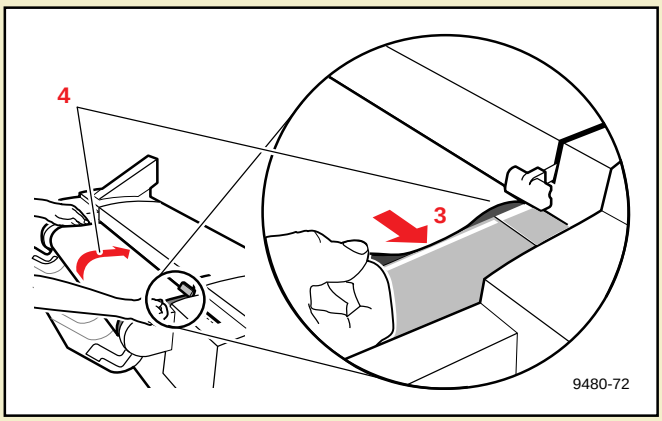
use the cutting tool that was shipped with the printer to cut a ge along the printer's cutting guide. Refer to Cutting roll media te instructions on getting a straight leading edge.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

aper roll cover open,
de on the right side of
to ensure that the
rs straight.

e paper by the outside
de the paper evenly
t between the top
printer body until it
ut two or three inches)
s slightly.

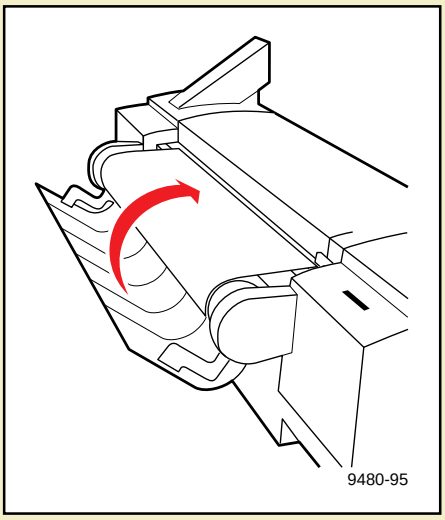


picks the paper and
t, and the front panel displays a series of messages (**Loading...**;
g...); when the media is successfully loaded, the **Ready**
ppears.

dvances the paper to measure the paper and calibrate for its width
..). Once the paper is measured, the printer reverses the paper
ng...) so that it is aligned and ready to print.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

paper roll cover.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

installation

your printer is a CD-ROM and a set of diskettes that contain the
ed to use the printer. Included are automatic installer applications,
description files (PPDs), color sampler charts, and utility files.

w for all PC and Macintosh platforms for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

all PC and Macintosh platforms

ic steps to software installation:

river you want to install:

See Which Windows driver to install?
See Which Macintosh driver to install?

stallation option (**Easy** or **Custom**) you want.

See Custom Install or Easy Install?
See Custom Install or Easy Install?

er's software according to your platform-specific procedures.

ll A pre-defined list of drivers, PPDs, utility files
stall A custom-selected list of drivers, PPDs, utility files, software applications

-screen prompts.

or use with your printer.

structions for the driver you installed.

orm-specific installation procedures:

ws Turn to PC/Windows software now.
Turn to Macintosh software now.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ows software

owing topics for more information:

dows driver to install?

tall or Easy Install?

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

dows driver to install?

river	Features	Notes
ektronix (Microsoft 3.58)	■ Simple, familiar interface for Windows 3.1 users ■ Supports PhaserMatch custom profiles ■ Custom page sizes	■ Fewer features than Adobe PostScript 3.0.1
dobePS 3 PostScript driver	■ Includes all features of the Tektronix driver, and more ■ Similar to Windows 95 driver ■ Supports PhaserMatch custom profiles	■ Harder to use than the Tektronix driver
icrosoft PostScript	■ Standard driver for Windows 95 ■ ColorSync support	■ No support for PhaserMatch custom profiles
dobePS 4 PostScript driver	■ Includes all features of the Microsoft driver ■ Supports PhaserMatch custom profiles ■ Includes N-Up and Watermark	
indows NT 3.5, 3.51 ostScript drivers indows NT 4.0 PostScript river	■ Includes printer-specific features	■ No support for PhaserMatch custom profiles

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tall or Easy Install?

Software	Description	Installed directory
Windows 95	Microsoft Windows 95 PostScript driver	
Windows 3.1	Tektronix PostScript driver	
Samplers	Color sampler charts and a font sampler	*phsrtool\samplers*
QuarkXPress PDF File	Installs *tkph6001.pdf*, if application is present	*\pdf* inside application directory
PhaserPrint	PhaserPrint plug-in for Adobe Photoshop for Windows	*phsrtool\photoshp* (move to *\plugins* inside application directory)
Pantone Files	Pantone color charts	*phsrtool\pantone*
Windows 95	AdobePS 4 PostScript driver	
Windows NT	Files for using a Windows NT 3.5, 3.51, 4.0 PostScript driver	
Windows 3.1*	AdobePS 3 PostScript driver	
Pantone Files*	Color charts and color library files	*phsrtool\pantone*
Printer Utilities	Printer-specific utility files	*phsrtool\phsr600*
Network Utilities*	Utility files for using the printer on a network	*phsrtool\net_util*
PhaserMatch*	Application for creating custom profiles	*phsrtool\phsrmtch*
Manuals*	Adobe Acrobat PDF versions of the printers manuals	*phsrtool\manuals*
Adobe Acrobat Reader*	Application for viewing on-line manuals	

printer's CD-ROM.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

software for Windows

e printer's CD-ROM or the Windows Disk 1 into the appropriate drive on

ows 95

icon in the
Run.

For Windows 3.1

2. Select **Run** from the **File** menu.

e (for either the CD-ROM or diskette) and type *SETUP.EXE*. Click **OK**.

e next two screens.

Custom Install and click **Next**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

software for Windows (cont'd.)

For Windows 95 and Windows 3.1

stall

ep **6**.

Custom Install

Follow the on-screen prompts to select items in the dialog boxes.

Note The Tektronix driver for Windows 3.1 must be installed in the **Windows** directory (default **Destination Directory**). Do not change the **Destination Directory** when installing the Tektronix driver unless you are installing the driver on a network and you know the location of the **Windows** directory on the network drive.

- **If you use QuarkXPress:** In the **QuarkXPress Installation Selections** dialog box, select **Automatic Search** or **Choose Destination**. (If you are using a network copy of QuarkXPress, select **Choose Destination**). Follow the prompts, then click **Next**.
- **To bypass:** Select **Do not install**.
- The next dialog box lists the items you have selected to install. Click **Back** to change any selections. Click **Next** when you have the selections you want.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

software for Windows (cont'd.)

r program is launched that installs or sets up the drivers (except for the for Windows 3.1). Each driver has a unique installation procedure; follow the rn to Step **7** on this page.

vers for Windows 95	■ Microsoft PostScript driver	■ Adobe PostScript driver
vers for Windows 3.1	■ Tektronix driver	■ Adobe PostScript driver
Script driver for Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51		■ PostScript driver
nter on a network for Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51		■ Setting up on a network
Script driver for Windows NT 4.0		■ PostScript driver
nter on a network for Windows NT 4.0		■ Setting up on a network

the printer's CD-ROM, *and* you selected **Easy Install** or **PhaserMatch** under **tall**, select a location to install the PhaserMatch icon. Click **Next** to continue.

lation Completed dialog box appears, click **Yes** to view the *README.TXT* file; **h**.

End

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

drivers for Windows 95

ostScript driver	Adobe PostScript driver
Follow Installing printer software for Windows, through Step **6**.	
the **Add Printer** box.	**2.** In the driver setup dialog box, click **Read** for driver instructions; click **Next**.
Select your printer's connection: ■ **Local Printer** printer connected to your computer ■ **Network Printer** printer accessed through a network	
ive you are using.	**4.** Select the drive you are using; select the directory for *ADOBEPS4*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

drivers for Windows 95 (cont'd.)

ostScript driver	Adobe PostScript driver

elect your printer:

- **Tektronix Phaser 600** Standard configuration
- **Tektronix Phaser 600 with Extended Features** Extended Features option

Note Press and hold down the front panel's button for configuration information.

elect the port your printer is connected to and click **Next**.

elect the Phaser 600 as the default printer; click **Next**.

eturn to Installing printer software for Windows to perform Step **7** and Step **8** of the nstallation procedure.

Note See the *Adobe PostScript Printer Driver User Guide* on the printer's CD-ROM (*USRGUIDE.PDF*) for detailed information on the AdobePS 4 driver.

End

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ivers for Windows 3.1

ix driver

Adobe PostScript driver

llow Installing printer software for Windows, through Step **6**.

e you are using and

nter and click **Next**:

aser 600 - Base
ndard configuration)

aser 600 -
eatures
eatures option)

d down the front panel's
configuration information.

2. The Adobe installer automatically starts. Click **Continue**.
3. Click **Restart Windows** (Windows is not restarted yet; the Adobe installer completes and the printer installer continues).
4. Return to Installing printer software for Windows to perform Step **7** and Step **8** of the installation procedure. Then go on to Step **1** of the next procedure.

   Windows is automatically restarted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ivers for Windows 3.1 (cont'd.)

ix driver

ng printer software for
orm Step **7**
e installation procedure.
tep **1** of the next
w.

Adobe PostScript driver

5. Select your printer and click **Install**:

- **Tektronix Phaser 600** (standard configuration)
- **Tektronix Phaser 600 - Extended** (Extended Features option)

Note Press and hold down the front panel's button for configuration information.

6. Click **OK**; click **Close**; click **OK**.

Note See the *Adobe PostScript Printer Driver User Guide* on the printer's CD-ROM (*USRGUIDE.PDF*) for detailed information on the AdobePS 3 driver.

the **Control Panel**, double-click **Printers**.

lect the **Tektronix Phaser 600** printer you installed in the above procedure; ck **Connect**.

lect the port the printer is connected to; click **OK**.

End

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tScript driver for Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51

NT driver does not support the PhaserMatch application. Refer to Which Windows driver to ormation on drivers that do.

d your original Windows NT setup diskettes (or CD-ROM) to complete this procedure.

r has an Intel-compatible processor, such as the Intel I386, go on to Step **2**.

is a MIPS, Alpha, or PowerPC, edit the *PRINTER.INF* file (located in the tory on the printer's CD-ROM or in the top level of the Windows 95/NT diskette).

les to a new, formatted diskette, *placing them at the top (root) level of the*

TEK1
PRINTER.INF
TKPH6001.PPD Standard configuration
TKP600P1.PPD Extended Features option

d down the printer's button on the front panel for configuration information.

y of the *PRINTER.INF* file on the new diskette in a text editor such as **Notepad**.

llowing section in the *PRINTER.INF* file:

```
[ProductType]
STF_PLATFORM = I386
```

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tScript driver for Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51 (cont'd.)

with one of the following depending on your computer type:

- **MIPS** for a MIPS platform
- **Alpha** for an Alpha platform
- **ppc** for a PowerPC

INTER.INF file.

the **Print Manager** icon in the **Main** window.

ostScript printer driver installed, go on to Step **4**.

now. Driver files are required to complete the Tektronix printer installation.

nter menu, select **Create Printer**; the **Create Printer** dialog box appears.

, scroll through the list and select a PostScript printer, such as the Apple NT, and click **OK**.

-line instructions to install the driver files from your Windows NT CD-ROM or

enu, select **Create Printer**; under **Driver**, select **Other**.

d, type in the CD-ROM or diskette drive location; click **OK**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tScript driver for Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51 (cont'd.)

nter and click **OK**:

aser 600 (standard configuration)

aser 600 with Extended features (Extended Features option)

d down the printer's button on the front panel for configuration information.

e's path from Step **5**; click **Continue**.

nen prompted for the location of the *PSCRPTUI.DLL* and *PSCRIPT.DLL* files.

rinter dialog box, fill in the other fields as desired, then click **OK**.

in the **PostScript Printer Setup** dialog box. Click **OK**.

ed: enable the **Use Printer Halftoning** option.

d a PostScript printer in Step **3**, delete it now:

nter you want to remove.

ve Printer in the **Printer** menu**.** Click **OK**.

End

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

printer on a network for Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51

Connection | **AppleTalk Connection**

NT 3.5 and 3.51 include network software called **Services for Macintosh** (AppleTalk) and **nt services** (for TCP/IP; lpr print services). Refer to your Windows NT manual for instructions g this network software. After this software is loaded, follow these steps:

Select **Create a new printer** in the **Print Manager**; select the appropriate printer driver.

Select **Other** in the **Print to** field of the From the **Printer Properties** dialog box.

Port for **Available Print** ck **OK**.

3. Select **AppleTalk Printing Devices** for **Available Print Monitors**; click **OK**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

printer on a network for Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51 (cont'd.)

Connection

address of host providing
r printer's **IP address**
e if known to the network).

's IP address may be available on the
nfiguration page. If not, ask your
lministrator.

printer on that machine,
f the following:

for PostScript

for automatic selection;
use capital letters

complete the

AppleTalk Connection

4. Double-click on the appropriate zone (if there are multiple AppleTalk zones).

   Select your Tektronix printer and click **OK**.

5. At the prompt ***Do you want to capture this AppleTalk Printing Device?***, click **No**.

   Note Clicking **Yes** hides the printer from regular Macintosh users, forcing them to use NT Server as a spooler, as long as NT Server allows sharing of this printer.

6. Click **OK** to complete the installation.

End

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

stScript driver for Windows NT 4.0

s NT driver does not support the PhaserMatch application. Refer to Which Windows driver to nformation on drivers that do.

ve your original Windows NT setup diskettes (or CD-ROM) to complete this procedure.

ion on installing a driver for a Windows NT 4.0 client on a Windows NT 3.51 server, refer to the -line services. See If you need help for instructions on using the on-line services.

s Folder, double-click the **Add Printer** icon.

Printer menu, follow the **Add Printer Wizard** instructions until the **s/Printers** window appears. Click on **Have Disk**.

From Disk dialog box, do the following:

se.

dialog box select the **Drive** for the printer's CD-ROM.

WIN95_NT directory under **Folders**; click **OK**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

stScript driver for Windows NT 4.0 (cont'd.)

inter from the list that appears, then click **Next**:

haser 600 (standard configuration)

haser 600 Extended Features (Extended Features option)

old down the printer's button on the front panel for configuration information.

propriate settings in **Add Printer Wizard**, then click **Finish**.

eeded dialog box, click **Browse** and locate the printer's CD-ROM or installation
OK.

propriate settings in **Add Printer Wizard**, then click **Finish**.

eeded dialog box, click **Browse** and locate the printer's CD-ROM or installation
OK.

returned to the **Properties** dialog box, fill in the other fields as desired, then

End

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

printer on a network for Windows NT 4.0

te the driver on a Windows NT 4.0 Server or Workstation

ws NT driver does not support the PhaserMatch application. Refer to Which Windows driver to information on drivers that do.

ave your original Windows NT 4.0 diskettes (or CD-ROM) to complete this procedure.

ed the printer's IP address for this procedure; it may be available on the printer's configuration t, ask your network administrator.

ministrator or a user with administrator rights.

Start button. Select **Settings**, then select **Printer** from the sub menu.

on the **Add Printer** icon In the **Printers** dialog box.

these options, then click **Next**:

ter Locally installed and managed printer

Networked printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

printer on a network for Windows NT 4.0 (cont'd.)

ally connected printer, click on the port that the printer is connected to:

Parallel-printer connection

Serial-connected printer

Networked printer

ended: connect via TCP/IP by double-clicking on the **LPR Port**.

ort is not listed in this box, the Microsoft TCP/IP Printing Services needs to be added to the NT
he original Windows NT distribution diskettes are needed during installation. Click Start,
ontrol Panel, Network. Click on the Services tab, then click Add. Select Microsoft TCP/IP
en click OK and install this service.

TCP/IP Printing Services are not listed in the options box, install the TCP/IP protocol on the
s is done from the Control Panel/Network box. Click on the Protocols tab and lick on Add.
/IP Protocol and click OK. To apply these changes, restart the Windows NT 4.0 server.

ter's IP address in the box labeled **Name or address of server providing lpd**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

printer on a network for Windows NT 4.0 (cont'd.)

rked **Name of printer or print queue on that server**, enter **PS** (for PostScript)
, then click **OK**.

n the **Printer Ports** box.

inter Wizard dialog box, click the box next to this new port; then click **Next**.

Printer Wizard dialog box, click **Have Disk** to add a new Tektronix driver.

path name (CD-ROM or diskette) to the driver files, then click **OK**.

rinter model and click **Next**.

that a driver is already installed for this printer, select **Replace existing**
click **Next**.

printer's name (any name you want). Click the appropriate box to use this
e default. Then click **Next**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

printer on a network for Windows NT 4.0 (cont'd.)

of the following options, then click **Next**:

To share the printer on the network (Click on all platforms that may use this printer.)

If the printer is a local printer only

of these options, then click **Finish**:

Print a test page ***Recommended***

Do not print a test page

iginal Windows NT distribution CD-ROM into your computer's CD-ROM drive.

path name to the requested files, then click **OK**.
e usually in the *1386* directory for Intel-based Windows NT servers.)

d a test page, check if it printed; then click **OK**.

End

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

h software

owing topics for more information:

intosh driver to install?

tall or Easy Install?

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ntosh driver to install?

	Features	Notes
1.2)	■ Simple, familiar interface for 7.1.2 users ■ Faster foreground printing ■ Supports PhaserMatch custom profiles ■ Lets you to disable background printing for printing large files.	■ No support for custom page sizes
8.3.2)	■ Required by some applications (PageMaker) ■ Slower foreground printing ■ Custom page sizes ■ ColorSync support	■ No support for PhaserMatch custom profiles
1)	■ Includes all features of the LaserWriter 8 driver ■ Supports PhaserMatch custom profiles ■ ColorSync support ■ Includes N-Up and Watermark	■ Slower foreground printing
	■ For use with QuickDraw GX ■ Supports PhaserMatch custom profiles	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tall or Easy Install?

tware	Description	Installed folder
be PSPrinter er 8.3.1	Driver for use with all (non-GX) Macintosh systems.	*System Folder:Extensions*
ser 600 Driver	Custom driver based on the LaserWriter 7.1.2 printer driver.	*System Folder: Extensions*
ser 600 GX Driver	Driver for use with QuickDraw GX.	*System Folder: Extensions*
ter Descriptions	PPDs for use with drivers and applications.	*System Folder:Extensions: Printer Descriptions*
een Fonts	Screen fonts to match the printer's fonts.	*System Folder:Fonts*
orSync Profile	Printer profile for use with ColorSync 2.0.	*System Folder: Preferences: ColorSync™ Profiles*
plers	Color sampler charts and a fonts sampler.	*PhaserTools:Samplers*
rkXPress PDF File	File for use with the QuarkXPress application.	*QuarkXPress* application folder: *PDF*
serPrint toshop Plug-in	Custom plug-in for printing from Adobe Photoshop.	*Photoshop application folder: Plugs-ins: Acquire/Export*
be Acrobat Reader	Installs the alias to the Acrobat Reader installer onto your hard disk.	Installs alias to Acrobat Reader installer in *PhaserTools* folder.
erWriter 8.3.2 er	Installs the alias to the Apple LaserWriter driver installer onto your hard disk.	Installs alias to the LaserWriter installer in *PhaserTools* folder.
uals *	Acrobat Reader PDF files of the printer's manuals.	*PhaserTools:Manuals*
ter Utilities *	Printer utility files for controlling printer features.	*PhaserTools: Printer Utilities*
work Utilities *	Utility files for using the printer on a network.	*PhaserTools:Network Utilities*
TONE Files *	PANTONE Color library files and sampler chart.	*PhaserTools:PANTONE Files*

printer's CD-ROM.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

software for Macintosh

er application on the printer's CD-ROM or diskettes to install the printer's standard software. Then, driver-specific setup instructions for the driver you are using.

printer's CD-ROM or Macintosh diskette into the appropriate drive on your

e **Phaser 600 Installer** icon. Click **Continue** until the **Easy Install** window

tall or **Custom Install** (see Custom Install or Easy Install? for the list of files in

Click **Install**.

- For details on each item, click **Read Me.**

ll: Select **Custom Install** (CD-ROM only).

- Select individual items to install.
- Click the ***I*** buttons for information on each item.
- Click **Install** when to install the selected items.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Phaser 600 printer driver

driver is a Tektronix-modified version of Apple's LaserWriter 7.1.2 printer driver. Use it if you are
n Software 6.0.7, or 7.0 and later. It is the easiest driver to use.

the printer's software, including the **Phaser 600 Driver** (Installing printer
cintosh), select **Chooser** from the **Apple** menu.

haser 600 printer driver icon on the left side of the **Chooser**.

one for your printer. See your network administrator if you have questions.

Phaser 600 printer in the list of printers on the right side of the **Chooser**. If it
t, check your hardware connections and which zone you have selected in the

oser.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

dobe PSPrinter driver

SPrinter driver uses printer-specific PPD (PostScript Printer Description) files for information on a sizes and printing options. Follow these steps to use the Adobe PSPrinter driver with a Phaser 600 printer is busy, it may take some time to complete this set-up procedure; do this when the printer is have to set up a printer once.

rmation on this driver, refer to the Adobe PSPrinter Manual on the printer's CD-ROM for more mation on the Adobe PSPrinter driver.

the printer's software, including the **Adobe PSPrinter Driver** and **Printer** nstalling printer software for Macintosh), open the **Chooser**.

rinter driver icon.

ne for your printer. See your network administrator if you have questions.

rinter in the list of printers in the **Chooser**.

D for your printer, then click **Select**:

PD Standard configuration
PD Extended Features option

d down the printer's button on the front panel for configuration information.

oser.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

haser 600 GX driver

er 600 GX driver if you are using Apple Macintosh QuickDraw GX.

X does not work with non-QuickDraw GX printer drivers. To print from non-QuickDraw GX
ith a driver such as the LaserWriter 8, disable QuickDraw GX.

rmation on this driver, refer to Using the Phaser 600 GX Driver.

the printer's software, including the **Phaser 600 GX Driver** (Installing printer
cintosh), open the **Chooser** from the **Apple** menu.

ser 600 GX driver icon.

ne for your printer. See your network administrator if you have questions.

rinter in the list of printers in the **Chooser**.

via field's pop-up menu, select your printer's communication method:

tionStandard network connection

on Selects a shared desktop printer

er 600 printer in the list of printers in the **Chooser**.

o create a desktop printer). An icon of the printer appears on the desktop with
as the printer selected in the **Chooser**.

oser.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

pple LaserWriter 8 driver

ter 8 driver, available only on the printer's CD-ROM, uses printer-specific PPD (PostScript Printer les for information on a printer's page sizes and printing options. Follow these steps to use the driver with a Phaser 600 printer.

is busy, it may take some time to complete this set-up procedure; do this when the printer is have to set up a printer once.

ation, the LaserWriter 8 driver leaves other versions of the LaserWriter driver (such as 7.x and ut overwrites an earlier version of the LaserWriter 8 driver.

ware installation on Installing printer software for Macintosh. At Step **3**, choose ; then select **LaserWriter 8.x Driver** and **Printer Descriptions**.

r:

rTools folder on your hard disk, locate the alias to the *8.x Installer*.

on the alias to open the installer application on the printer's CD-ROM (the CD-ROM rted to be accessed).

n-screen instructions to install the driver.

oser; select the **LaserWriter 8** driver icon.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

pple LaserWriter 8 driver (cont'd.)

ne your printer is in. See your network administrator if you have questions.

nter from the list.

oser, click the **Setup** button to see a list of options.

D file is automatically selected. If it is not, click on the PPD for your printer, then

PPD	Standard configuration
PPD	Extended Features option

d down the printer's button on the front panel for configuration information.

ropriate items under **Installable Options**, then click **OK**.

oser.

End

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ion software

rinter utility files

ting from UNIX and VMS Workstations for more information on printing from a workstation.

on the printer's CD-ROM and diskettes can be used with UNIX and VMS
let you set up your spooling system to select the following:

mode

tion mode

r features

users can access utility files in any of the following ways:

m includes a CD-ROM drive, install the files from the printer's CD-ROM.
bin direction for workstation-specific files.

rinter's diskette and copy the files.

Tektronix anonymous **ftp** site on the Internet at **ftp.tek.com**.

tility files from the Tektronix Bulletin Board Service (BBS); refer to If you need
rmation.

Tektronix World Wide Web server on the Internet:

//www.tek.com/Color_Printers/ Home page

ftp.tek.com/bbs/<*platform*>/600Utility files

ple scripts that are available on-line; refer to If you need help for information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tware for UNIX (demo)

rint™ for UNIX software provides:

- table printer options
- le printing to Tektronix color printers
- -copy printing to Tektronix color printers

CD-ROM contains a demonstration copy of the PhaserPrint for UNIX software and an on-line uide in the *UNIXDEMO* directory. For order information, refer to PhaserPrint.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PRINTING BASICS

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

overview

your printer from Windows-based PCs (personal computers), uters, and workstations. Make sure that your printer is set up with interface port; refer to Connecting the printer. If you haven't already nter's software, refer to Software installation for instructions before

owing topics for specific information:

m a PC

m a Macintosh

m a workstation

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rom a PC

m a PC with or without a printer driver. The supported drivers allow nting features right from your computer. Without a supported driver, ome printing selections from the printer's front panel; refer t Panel.

owing topics for more information:

es quick reference: Windows printer drivers

Microsoft PostScript driver with Windows 95

AdobePS 4 driver with Windows 95

Tektronix printer driver for Windows 3.1

Adobe PostScript driver for Windows 3.1

Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51 PostScript driver

Windows NT 4.0 PostScript driver

om DOS

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

es quick reference: Windows printer drivers

owing topics for individual print feature tables for each driver:

Windows 3.1: AdobePS 3 PostScript Driver

Windows 3.1: Tektronix PostScript Driver

Windows 95: AdobePS 4 and Microsoft PostScript Drivers

Windows NT 4.0

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws 3.1: AdobePS 3 PostScript Driver

	Description	Driver selection
, E A1, A0 B4 , E	Selecting media by size	Paper tab ➥ Paper Size
	Selecting media by size	Paper tab ➥ Paper Source
es	Print quality modes	Features tab ➥ Print Quality

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws 3.1: AdobePS 3 PostScript Driver (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
	Color corrections	Features tab ➥ Color Correction
y		
ss		
ng		
	Fusing Mode / Media Fusing	Features tab ➥ Fusing Mode
	Cut Media	Features tab ➥ Cut Media
e		

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws 3.1: AdobePS 3 PostScript Driver (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
	Advance Media	Features tab ➥ Advance Media
e		
g		
	Print Preview	Features tab ➥ Print Preview
e Extended		
	Page Rotation	Features tab ➥ Page Rotation
	Page Centering	Features tab ➥ Page Centering

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws 3.1: AdobePS 3 PostScript Driver (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
g	Image Smoothing	Features tab ➥ Image Smoothing
ip	Color Control Strip	Features tab ➥ Color Control Strip
	Mirror Print	Features tab ➥ Mirror Print

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws 3.1: Tektronix PostScript Driver

	Description	Driver selection
, E A1, A0 B4 , E	Selecting media by size	Printers ➥ Setup ➥ Paper Size
	Selecting media by size	Printers ➥ Setup ➥ Paper Source
es	Print quality modes	Options ➥ Printer Features ➥ Print Quality

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws 3.1: Tektronix PostScript Driver (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
	Color corrections	Options ➥ Printer Features ➥ Color Correction
	Fusing Mode / Media Fusing	Options ➥ Printer Features ➥ Fusing Mode
	Cut Media	Options ➥ Printer Features ➥ Cut Media

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws 3.1: Tektronix PostScript Driver (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
	Advance Media	Options ➥ Printer Features ➥ Advance Media
	Print Preview	Options ➥ Printer Features ➥ Print Preview
	Page Rotation	Options ➥ Printer Features ➥ Page Rotation
	Page Centering	Options ➥ Printer Features ➥ Page Centering

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws 3.1: Tektronix PostScript Driver (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
g	Image Smoothing	Options ➥ Printer Features ➥ Image Smoothing
ip	Color Control Strip	Options ➥ Printer Features ➥ Color Control Strip
	Mirror Print	Options ➥ Printer Features ➥ Mirror Print

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws 95: AdobePS 4 and Microsoft PostScript Drivers

	Description	Driver selection
, E A1, A0 B4 , E	Selecting media by size	Properties ➥ Paper tab ➥ Paper Size
	Selecting media by size	Properties ➥ Paper tab ➥ Paper Source
es	Print quality modes	Properties ➥ Device Options tab ➥Printer Features ➥ Print Quality

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws 95: AdobePS 4 and Microsoft PostScript Drivers (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
	Color corrections	Properties ➥ Device Options tab ➥Printer Features ➥ Color Correction
	Fusing Mode / Media Fusing	Properties ➥ Device Options tab ➥Printer Features ➥ Fusing Mode
	Cut Media	Properties ➥ Device Options tab ➥Printer Features ➥ Cut Media

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws 95: AdobePS 4 and Microsoft PostScript Drivers (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
	Advance Media	Properties ➥ Device Options tab ➥Printer Features ➥ Advance Media
	Print Preview	Properties ➥ Device Options tab ➥Printer Features ➥ Print Preview
	Page Rotation	Properties ➥ Device Options tab ➥Printer Features ➥ Page Rotation
	Page Centering	Properties ➥ Device Options tab ➥Printer Features ➥ Page Centering

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws 95: AdobePS 4 and Microsoft PostScript Drivers (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
g	Image Smoothing	Properties ➥ Device Options tab ➥Printer Features ➥ Image Smoothing
ip	Color Control Strip	Properties ➥ Device Options tab ➥Printer Features ➥ Color Control Strip
	Mirror Print	Properties ➥ Device Options tab ➥Printer Features ➥ Mirror Print

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws NT 4.0

	Description	Driver selection
, E A1, A0 B4 , E	Selecting media by size	Print ➥ Properties ➥ Advanced tab ➥ Paper/output ➥ Paper Size
	Selecting media by size	Print ➥ Properties ➥ Advanced tab ➥ Paper/output ➥ Paper Source
es	Print quality modes	Print ➥ Properties ➥ Advanced tab ➥ Printer Features ➥ Print Quality

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws NT 4.0 (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
y	Color corrections	Print ➥ Properties ➥ Advanced tab ➥ Printer Features ➥ Color Correction
ss		
ng		
	Fusing Mode / Media Fusing	Print ➥ Properties ➥ Advanced tab ➥ Printer Features ➥ Fusing Mode
e	Cut Media	Print ➥ Properties ➥ Advanced tab ➥ Printer Features ➥ Cut Media

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws NT 4.0 (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
	Advance Media	Print ➥ Properties ➥ Advanced tab ➥ Printer Features ➥ Advance Media
	Print Preview	Print ➥ Properties ➥ Advanced tab ➥ Printer Features ➥ Print Preview
	Page Rotation	Print ➥ Properties ➥ Advanced tab ➥ Printer Features ➥ Page Rotation

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws NT 4.0 (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
	Page Centering	Print ➥ Properties ➥ Advanced tab ➥ Printer Features ➥ Page Centering
g	Image Smoothing	Print ➥ Properties ➥ Advanced tab ➥ Printer Features ➥ Image Smoothing
ip	Color Control Strip	Print ➥ Properties ➥ Advanced tab ➥ Printer Features ➥ Color Control Strip

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ws NT 4.0 (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
	Mirror Print	Print ➥ Properties ➥ Advanced tab ➥ Printer Features ➥ Mirror Print

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Microsoft PostScript driver with Windows 95

g options, follow these steps:

ters window, click the **Phaser 600** printer icon with the right mouse
n select **Properties** from the menu.

llowing tabs to see printing options; refer to your Windows 95
ation for more information on tabs and options.

Details tab to see timeout and other options.

Timeout settings.

lected: Type a value from **0** to **999**, in this text box to change
mber of seconds Windows waits before notifying you that a
is off-line. The default is **15** seconds.

mission Retry: On large or multiple-page documents you may
Alert message that the printer is no longer accepting data
the job is completely sent to the printer. When using a shared
you should set this option to a larger value, such as **900**
ds (15 minutes) to avoid these unnecessary timeouts. Type a
etween **45** and **999** in this text box; the default setting is **45**
s.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

aper tab to see media options, such as media sizes and media
e manual feed for cut-sheet media.

Graphics tab to see graphics options.

t Quality selections in the **Device Options** tab instead of the
Options in the **Graphics** tab. Click the Device Options tab to see
ic options, such as color corrections. for details.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ing host color correction, you need to make selections in the **Graphics Options** tabs. Refer to Color Matching for more information on host color

evice Options tab to see printer-specific options, such as color s.

ostScript tab to see PostScript-related options.

stScript header contains important PostScript information that ccompany each print job; it is not a banner page printed with b. If an option is not selected, an error message is displayed on mputer screen and your job does not print. Click one of the g in the **PostScript header** field:

Download header with each print job. This option downloads ript header information with each print job.

e **Send Header Now** button to save the PostScript header tion in the printer, then select the **Assume header is oaded and retained** option. This option makes print files a little and faster than the first option, but you need to click the **Send Now** button every time the printer is turned off or reset.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e **Advanced** button to see more options. Select **Use PostScript**
features. For faster printing, select **Binary communications**
ol under **Data format**. To ensure job integrity, select **Send**
before and after a job. Click **OK** when finished.

PostScript Timeout values, leave **Job Timeout** set to **0**. Set
meout to the default, **240** (4 minutes). Setting it higher ensures
u will not lose a multi-page job due to a timeout after the
nission Retry alert message is displayed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

dobePS 4 driver with Windows 95

g options, follow these steps:

ters window, click the **Phaser 600** printer icon with the right mouse
n select **Properties** from the menu.

llowing tabs to see printing options; refer to your Windows 95
tion for more information on tabs and options.

Details tab to see timeout and other options.

Timeout settings.

lected: Type a value from **0** to **999**, in this text box to set the
r of seconds Windows waits before notifying you that a printer is
The default is **15** seconds.

nission Retry: On large or multiple-page documents you may
Alert message that the printer is no longer accepting data
the job is completely sent to the printer. When using a shared
you should set this option to a larger value, such as **900**
ds (15 minutes) to avoid these unnecessary timeouts. Type a
etween **45** and **999** in this text box; the default setting is **45**
s.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

aper tab to see media options, such as media sizes and media
e manual feed for cut-sheet.

raphics tab to see graphics options.

ing host color correction, you need to make selections in the **Graphics**
Options tabs. Refer to Color Matching for more information on host color

evice Options tab to see printer-specific options, such as color
s.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ostScript tab to see PostScript-related options.

stScript header contains important PostScript information that ccompany each print job; it is not a banner page printed with b. If an option is not selected, an error message is displayed on mputer screen and your job does not print. Click one of the g in the **PostScript header** field:

Download header with each print job. This option downloads ript header information with each print job.

e **Send Header Now** button to save the PostScript header tion in the printer, then select the **Assume header is oaded and retained** option. This option makes print files a little and faster than the first option, but you need to click the **Send Now** button every time the printer is turned off or reset.

e **Advanced** button to see more options. Select **Use PostScript features**. For faster printing, select **Binary communications ol** under **Data format**. To ensure job integrity, select **Send** before and after a job. Click **OK** when finished.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PostScript Timeout values, leave **Job Timeout** set to **0**. Set **meout** to the default, **240** (4 minutes). Setting it higher ensures u will not lose a multi-page job due to a timeout after the **nission Retry** alert message is displayed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ektronix printer driver for Windows 3.1

g options, follow these steps:

ontrol Panel, double-click the **Printers** icon.

ters dialog box, choose your printer from the list of installed

et As Default Printer button if you want to select your printer as the

onnect button; the **Connect** dialog box appears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

port to which your printer is connected.

's configuration page contains the information you need to set ter's port. Refer to Printing the configuration page for instructions a configuration page.

Select	Then do the following
LPTx	Go to Step 6.
Network port (**LPTx** or **COMx**)	**1.** Click the **Network** button to open the **Printers-Network Connections** dialog box. **2.** Fill in each item based on your configuration, then click **OK**. Refer to your Microsoft Windows documentation for details, or ask your network administrator for help.
COMx	Set up the serial port.

the **FILE** port to save a document to a PostScript file instead of sending er. For more information, see your Microsoft Windows documentation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

eouts. These options regulate your computer's communications
ter ports.

Not Selected:

value from **0** to **999**, in this text box to change the number of
s Windows waits before notifying you that a printer is off-line.
fault is **15** seconds.

ssion Retry:

e or multiple-page documents you may see an Alert message
printer is no longer accepting data before the job is completely
aded to the printer. When using a shared printer, you should set
ion to a larger value, such as **900 seconds** (15 minutes), to
hese unnecessary timeouts. Type a value between **45** and **999**
ext box; the default setting is **45** seconds.

return to the **Printers** dialog box, then click the **Setup** button. A
appears with the name of the printer you selected across the top.
alog box to select paper source, paper size, and image orientation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

etup dialog box, click the **Options** button to see the **Options**
Refer to your Microsoft Windows documentation for details on the
his dialog box.

ure the **Color** check box is **on** to print in color.

ure the **Send Header with Each Job** check box is *on*.

contains important PostScript information that must accompany each
s not a banner page printed with each job. If this box is not checked, an
ge is displayed on your computer screen and your job does not print.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ptions dialog box, click the **Advanced** button to see the **Options** dialog box. Make sure the **Use PostScript Level 2** heck box is checked *on*.

stScript Level 2 Features option affects the print time of bitmapped ges by improving the image transfer time from the computer to the printer, oving the image processing time in the printer. This option is only applications that use this Tektronix driver with Tektronix PostScript Level When this box is checked, the **Compress Bitmaps** option is unavailable .

o return to the **Options** dialog box.

ons dialog box, click the **Printer Features** button to see the **Printer Features** dialog box. Make color correction, print quality, elections as desired. Click **OK** to return to the **Options** dialog box.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

o return to the dialog box that lists your printer's name across the
the following printing selections: **Paper Source, Paper Size**,
n, **Copies**.

nt to set the number of copies from your application because the number
the Setup dialog box remains the same until you change it again. Also, if
ing multiple pages, make sure that the Transmission Retry: is set for at
conds (10 minutes).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

dobe PostScript driver for Windows 3.1

g options, follow these steps:

ontrol Panel, double-click **Printers**.

ters dialog box, select the **Tektronix Phaser 600** printer, then click
dialog box appears with the printer's name across the top.

llowing tabs to see printing options; refer to your Windows
tion for more information on tabs and options.

e **Paper** tab to see media options, such as media sizes and
source; use manual feed for cut-sheet media.

e **Features** tab to see printer-specific options, such as color
ions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Timeout settings.

lected: Type a value of from **0** to **999**, in this text box to change
nber of seconds Windows waits before notifying you that a
is off-line. The default is **15** seconds.

nission Retry: On large or multiple-page documents you may
Alert message that the printer is no longer accepting data
the job is completely sent to the printer. Set this option to a
alue, such as **900 seconds** (15 minutes) to avoid these
ssary timeouts. The default setting is **45** seconds.

ostScript tab to see PostScript-related options.

erformance Options field, select the **Use PostScript Level 2**
es option.

PostScript Timeout values, leave **Job Timeout** set to **0**. Set
meout to the default, **240** (4 minutes). Setting it higher ensures
u will not lose a multi-page job due to a timeout after the
nission Retry alert message is displayed.

ob Control tab to see print job-related options.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

pt header contains important PostScript information that must
each print job; it is not a banner page printed with each job. If an option
ed, an error message is displayed on your computer screen and your job
nt.

ne of the following in the **PostScript Header** field:

Download Each Job. This option downloads PostScript header
tion with each print job.

he **Already Downloaded** option to save the PostScript header
tion in the printer, then click the **Download** button. This option
print files a little smaller and faster than the first option, but you
click the **Download** button every time the printer is turned off
or reset.

ter performance, select the **Binary Mode** option.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51 PostScript driver

Microsoft Windows NT, follow the instructions in Setting up a for Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51 to set up a Windows NT PostScript aser 600 printer.

printer page sizes in the driver for Windows NT applications, or color corrections and other PostScript Level 2 features are not e Windows NT driver. Refer to Selecting print features for instructions or corrections from the printer's front panel or from downloadable

crosoft Windows NT documentation for details on features in the ver.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windows NT 4.0 PostScript driver

Microsoft Windows NT 4.0, first follow the instructions in Setting up a for Windows NT 4.0 to set up a printer driver for a Phaser 600 printer. Color color corrections and other printer features from the Windows

on on installing a driver for a Windows NT 4.0 client on a Windows 3.51 to the Tektronix on-line services. See If you need help for instructions on -line services.

owing topics for more information:

rinter options within an application: Print

rinter options within an application: Page Setup

rinter options from the Control Panel

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nter options within an application: Print

t from the **File** menu; the **Print** dialog box appears. You can select printer and other settings in this dialog box.

e **Properties** button; the **Printer Document Properties** sheet

dvanced tab to change any printer features, including TekColor. splays the same information as the **Document Defaults Properties** tab.

age Setup tab to see other features. This tab displays the same as the **Documents Defaults Properties Page Setup** tab.

any of these settings override the **Default Printer Properties** settings in folder.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nter options within an application: Page Setup

the Printer Driver settings through Page Setup causes problems with the you are using, then change the Printer Driver settings through **Print le** menu, described in the next topic.

e Setup from the **File** menu; the **Page Setup** dialog box appears.

er Size and **Source**.

inter Folder Setting as the **Paper Source** uses the default setting made **ment Defaults** in the **Printers** folder. To change this setting, select a **urce** in **Page Setup**.

e **Printer** button; another **Page Setup** dialog box appears. You can ferent printer here.

e **Properties** button; the **Printer Document Properties** sheet

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

dvanced tab to change any printer features, including TekColor.
splays the same information as the **Document Defaults Properties**
tab.

age Setup tab to see other features. This tab displays the same
as the **Document Default Properties Page Setup** tab.

any of these settings overrides the **Defaults Printer Properties** settings
rs folder.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nter options from the Control Panel

's **Default Document Properties**,

Printers folder.

ght mouse button, click on the printer's icon.

t mouse button, click on **Document Defaults.**

dvanced tab to change any printer features, including TekColor.

age Setup tab to see other features.

erties set from an application always override document defaults set roperties sheets. However, if an application does not set a erty (such as page orientation or paper size), the printer defaults to roperties set in the printer's Document Properties sheets.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rom a Macintosh

lacintosh, you need a printer driver. Installing one of the supported ou to select printing features right from your computer. Without a r, you can make some printing selections from the printer's front

osh printer drivers

-specific features, print from one of the following provided drivers. s quick reference: Macintosh printer drivers for a list reference tables g features, and how to find them quickly, in each of these drivers.

0 driver	see Using the Phaser 600 driver
Printer driver	see Using the Adobe PSPrinter driver
0 GX driver	see Using the Phaser 600 GX driver
erWriter 8.x driver	see Using the Apple LaserWriter 8.x driver

nter's front panel

e Front Panel for instructions on using the printer's front panel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

es quick reference: Macintosh printer drivers

owing topics for individual print feature tables for each driver:

Driver: Tektronix Phaser 600

Driver: Adobe PSPrinter and Apple LaserWriter 8.x

Driver for QuickDraw GX: Tektronix Phaser 600 GX

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

: Tektronix Phaser 600

	Description	Driver selection
, E A1, A0 B4 , E	Selecting media by size	Page Setup ➥ Paper (Custom sizes not available.)
	Selecting media by size	Print ➥ Paper Source
es	Print quality modes	Print ➥ TekColor Options ➥ Print Quality

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

: Tektronix Phaser 600

	Description	Driver selection
	Color corrections	Print ➥ TekColor Options ➥ Color Correction
	Fusing Mode / Media Fusing	Print ➥ TekColor Options ➥ Fusing Mode
	Cut Media	Print ➥ TekColor Options ➥ Cut Media

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

: Tektronix Phaser 600

	Description	Driver selection
	Advance Media	Print ➥ TekColor Options ➥ Advance Media
	Print Preview	Print ➥ TekColor Options ➥ Print Preview
	Page Rotation	Print ➥ TekColor Options ➥ Page Rotation
	Page Centering	Print ➥ TekColor Options ➥ Page Centering

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

: Tektronix Phaser 600

	Description	Driver selection
g	Image Smoothing	Print ➥ TekColor Options ➥ Image Smoothing
ip	Color Control Strip	Print ➥ TekColor Options ➥ Color Control Strip
	Mirror Print	Page Setup ➥ Options ➥ Flip Horizontal/Vertical

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

: Adobe PSPrinter and Apple LaserWriter 8.x

	Description	Driver selection
, E A1, A0 B4 , E	Selecting media by size	Page Setup ➥ Paper
	Selecting media by size	Print ➥ Paper Source
es	Print quality modes	Print ➥ Print Options ➥ Print Quality

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

: Adobe PSPrinter and Apple LaserWriter 8.x (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
	Color corrections	Print ➥ Print Options ➥ Color Correction
	Fusing Mode / Media Fusing	Print ➥ Print Options ➥ Fusing Mode
	Cut Media	Print ➥ Print Options ➥ Cut Media

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

: Adobe PSPrinter and Apple LaserWriter 8.x (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
	Advance Media	Print ➥ Print Options ➥ Advance Media
g		
	Print Preview	Print ➥ Print Options ➥ Print Preview
e Extended		
	Page Rotation	Print ➥ Print Options ➥ Page Rotation
	Page Centering	Print ➥ Print Options ➥ Page Centering

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

: Adobe PSPrinter and Apple LaserWriter 8.x (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
g	Image Smoothing	Print ➥ Print Options ➥ Image Smoothing
ip	Color Control Strip	Print ➥ Print Options ➥ Color Control Strip
	Mirror Print	Page Setup ➥ Options ➥ Flip Horizontal/Vertical

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

for QuickDraw GX: Tektronix Phaser 600 GX

	Description	Driver selection
, E A1, A0 B4 , E	Selecting media by size	Page Setup ➥ Paper Size
	Selecting media by size	Print ➥ Paper Feed
es	Print quality modes	Printing menu ➥ Printer Driver Defaults ➥ Print Quality

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

for QuickDraw GX: Tektronix Phaser 600 GX (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
	Color corrections	Printing menu ➥ Printer Driver Defaults ➥ Color Correction
	Fusing Mode / Media Fusing	Printing menu ➥ Printer Driver Defaults ➥ Fusing Mode
	Cut Media	Printing menu ➥ Printer Driver Defaults ➥ Cut Media

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

for QuickDraw GX: Tektronix Phaser 600 GX (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
	Advance Media	Printing menu ➥ Printer Driver Defaults ➥ Advance Media
	Print Preview	Printing menu ➥ Printer Driver Defaults ➥ Print Preview
	Page Rotation	Printing menu ➥ Printer Driver Defaults ➥ Page Rotation
	Page Centering	Printing menu ➥ Printer Driver Defaults ➥ Page Centering

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

for QuickDraw GX: Tektronix Phaser 600 GX (cont'd.)

	Description	Driver selection
g	Image Smoothing	Printing menu ➥ Printer Driver Defaults ➥ Image Smoothing
ip	Color Control Strip	Printing menu ➥ Printer Driver Defaults ➥ Color Control Strip
	Mirror Print	Printing menu ➥ Printer Driver Defaults ➥ Mirror Print

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Phaser 600 driver

ile menu, open the **Page Setup** dialog box. Use the **Paper** enu to select the printer's supported paper sizes.

ile menu, open the **Print** dialog box. Select **Manual Feed** in the **rce** field for cut-sheet media.

ekColor button in the **Print** dialog box to see the **TekColor** ialog box. Select printer-specific options as desired.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

dobe PSPrinter driver

n-line user guide on the printer's CD-ROM for more information on using SPrinter driver.

ile menu, open the **Page Setup** dialog box. Use the **Paper** nu to select the printer's supported paper sizes.

ile menu, open the **Print** dialog box. Select **Manual Feed** in the **rce** field for cut-sheet media.

t dialog box, click the **Options** button to see the **Print Options** . There are printer-specific features listed at the bottom of the .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

pple LaserWriter 8.x driver

ile menu, open the **Page Setup** dialog box. Use the **Paper** enu to select the printer's supported paper sizes.

ile menu, open the **Print** dialog box. Select **Manual Feed** in the **rce** field for cut-sheet media.

t dialog box, click the **Options** button to see the **Print Options** . There are printer-specific features listed at bottom of the .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Phaser 600 GX driver

ng the Phaser 600 GX Driver for details on using the Phaser 600 GX driver.

a desktop printer

using QuickDraw GX applications, do *one* of the following:

any desktop printer in the **Print** dialog box.

document onto a desktop printer icon. The application
onding to the document opens, prints the document, and then

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

using non-QuickDraw GX applications, do *one* of the following:

the *default* desktop printer with the **Print** command from the enu.

document onto a desktop printer icon. The application ponding to the document opens, displays the **Print** dialog box, its for you to click **Print**. After printing the document, the tion quits.

nting options

mands in the **Printing** menu are standard QuickDraw GX driver are documented by Apple (see the *Macintosh Guide* on-line etails). The last group of commands in this menu are

Driver Defaults command in the **Printing** menu to set default elected desktop printer.

defaults dialog box is also available through the **Print** command in the r QuickDraw GX applications.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rom a workstation

m a UNIX or VMS workstation through Ethernet, Token Ring,
l interfaces. Workstation users can print from any application that
PostScript.

and examples on creating print queues for your specific platform,
x World Wide Web site:

http://www.tek.com/Color_Printers

tact Technical Support at **1-800-835-6100**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

olor color corrections and other printer features, use one of the
ds:

stations: PhaserPrint™ software for UNIX workstations functions
er driver for selecting printing options, and provides fast screen
ng.

stations: PhaserSym™ software and EasyCopy/X for VMS
ns provides proper communication with the printer.

s on the printer's front panel let you select printing options; refer
e Front Panel for instructions on using the front panel.

able utility files let you select printing options; refer to Using
ties for instructions.

nformation: Lists locations of optional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

stations

nments, Tektronix offers the optional PhaserPrint™ software.
UNIX software offers driver-selectable printer options and provides
nd screen copy printing to Tektronix color printers.

UNIX software is available for these workstations:

Workstation	Operating System
Sun	SunOS 4.1.3, Solaris 2.3, 2.4
SGI	IRIX 4.0, 5.2, 5.3
HP 9000 700/800	HPUX 9.0.5
IBM RS/6000	AIX 3.2
DECstation	Ultrix 4.0, 4.4
DEC Alpha	OSF/1 3.0 and 3.2

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

UNIX software works with the workstation's native spooling system to files and raster files in these formats: Sun Raster Format (SRF), and many others.

-ROM contains a demonstration copy of PhaserPrint for UNIX on-line instruction guide in the *UNIXDEMO* directory. If you would a licensed version of PhaserPrint software, contact your dealer, ffice, or in the United States, call **1-800-835-6100**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tations

S workstations, the optional PhaserSym™ utility, a VMS print
ons as a driver for selecting printing options, and as a queue
erSym software is compatible with DEC workstations running
n 5.0 and later. PhaserSym software communicates over the
l TCP/IP Ethernet interface, and is required for proper
with the printer.

syCopy/X software provides fast raster image printing to Tektronix

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

formation

e Web: If you have access to the Internet, you can view opics on the Phaser 600 printer's web page. Access the printer's ation from this web address:

w.tek.com/Color_Printers/userdoc/introduction.html

quest a document catalog from HAL or EuroHAL, Tektronix' fax systems. Refer to Using the automated fax systems for s on using HAL and EuroHAL.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rom specific applications

n most applications, follow the instructions in Software installation to
d printer software. Some applications require additional
page description files, which may have been installed with the

nts and tips

s and tips beyond the information provided in the application's
r additional information in the following places:

e Web: If you have access to the Internet, you can view
opics on the Phaser 600 printer's web page. Access the printer's
ation from this web address:

w.tek.com/Color_Printers/userdoc/introduction.html

uest a document catalog from HAL or EuroHAL, Tektronix'
fax systems. Refer to Using the automated fax systems for
s on using HAL and EuroHAL.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

print features

owing topics for more information:

selection

erence tables:

atures quick reference: front panel

from a PC

from a Macintosh

y modes

ctions

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

selection

ides several ways to select print features:

supported printer driver (recommended)
selections to override the settings on the printer's front panel.

printer's front panel
settings *only* when printing from a non-supported driver.

aserLink software
work is running TCP/IP and you have a World Wide Web browser,
e this browser to view printer status and select printer features.
e *PhaserShare Status Software User Manual* for complete
n.

PostScript utility file to the printer
settings *only* when printing from a non-supported driver. You
etailed information in Using Printer Utilities and the Phaser 600
eb page:

w.tek.com/Color_Printers/userdoc/introduction.html

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ick reference: front panel

	Feature descriptions	Front Panel
es	See Print quality modes	Printer Defaults Menu ➥ Print Quality Menu
	See Color corrections	Printer Defaults Menu ➥ TekColor Correction Menu
ss		
E A0 B4 C, D, E	See Selecting media by size	Media Defaults Menu ➥ Media Size Menu

ting
the Extended Features option.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ick reference: front panel (cont'd.)

	Feature descriptions	Front Panel
	See Fusing Mode / Media Fusing	Media Defaults Menu ➥ Media Fuse Menu
	See Cut Media	Media Defaults Menu ➥ Media Cut Menu
	Reprint	Pause Menu ➥ Reprint
g	See Image Smoothing	Printer Defaults Menu ➥ Image Smoothing Menu
	See Using a PostScript error handler	Printer Defaults Menu ➥ PS Error Handler Menu

ting
the Extended Features option.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

y modes

panel, the printer drivers provided with your printer, or PhaserLink
n select from these print quality modes:

default print-quality setting for full-color, full-coverage printing on
the fastest full-color printing on paper: printing time is 12 minutes
SI E-size (34 x 44 in.), and its Metric equivalent.

nting time is 24 minutes per page for ANSI E-size (34 x 44 in. and its
nt) in full-color, full-coverage; provides smoother images with less

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ctions

ides TekColor Dynamic Correction software, which consists of the correction modes. Refer to Color corrections — making the best ails.

ection mode	Description
Driver selection	
None	Default setting. No correction made to colors.
Vivid Color	Produces the brightest possible colors.
Simulate Display	Adjusts color to closely approximate the colors on a standard display screen.
SWOP Press	Specification for Web Offset Publications. Typically used to match U.S. press standards.
Euroscale Press	Used to match equivalent 3M Matchprint® proofs.
Commercial Press	Used to match commercial 3M Matchprint® proofs.
SNAP Press	Used for images designed to be printed on newsprint.
Monochrome	Prints a color image as a monochrome gray scale. Outputs color page masters in black-and-white for photocopying.
Use Printer Setting	Uses the color correction mode specified in the printer's front panel setting rather than any printer driver setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

corrections (SWOP, Euroscale, Commercial, and SNAP) can be
the PhaserMatch software that is included with the printer. For an
PhaserMatch software, refer to PhaserMatch. For detailed
instructions, refer to the *PhaserMatch User Manual* that was
printer.

approximate sample output of some color corrections at the bottom
tartup page. Refer to Printing the startup page for more information.

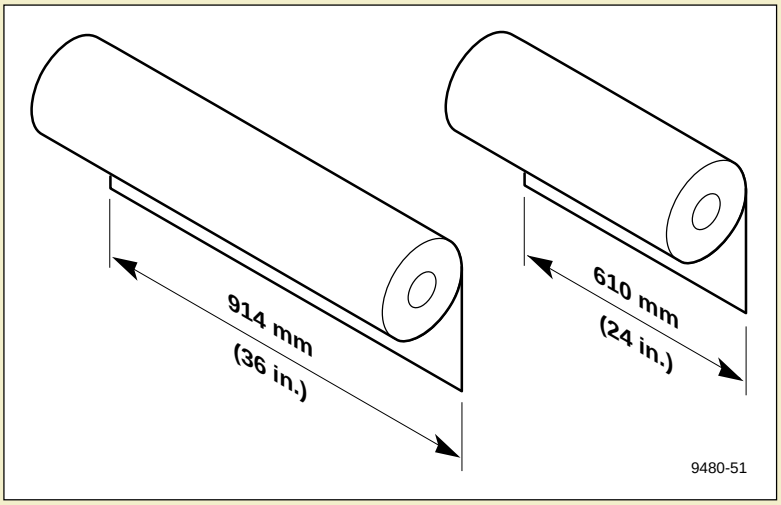
r is networked and you have changed the front panel settings, make
u tell other users on the network. Printer settings affect **all** prints made
pported drivers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

media

nedia by size

media by size
ter drivers or from
This printer is
ng on cut-sheet
sizes (refer to the
e size, print area,
well as media
width from
7 in. to 36 in.).



paper rolls with the widths shown in the illustration.

x media rolls have a three-inch core. If you are using a media roll with a e, you must remove the adapter on the paper roll holder. Refer to Using media roll: removing the core adapter for instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

d print area

r places an image on media, the maximum image area (print area) is
n the physical media size; you may need to adjust the page margins
on software to match the print area.

an image, remember that the margins remain the same, relative to the
trailing edges; if an unrotated image is placed against the trailing edge,
ped when it is rotated, because the leading edge's margin is larger.

e correct page margins, use the drivers supplied by Tektronix.

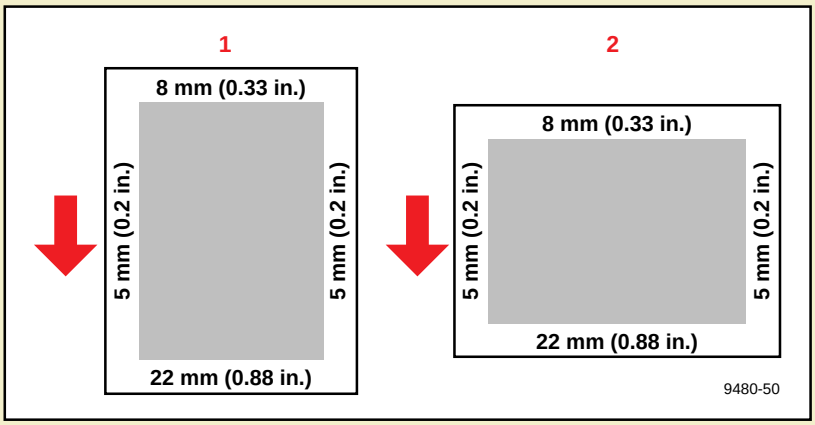
owing topics for more information:

media

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

edia

is smaller than
width and
stration shows
a cut-sheet as it
nd fed through

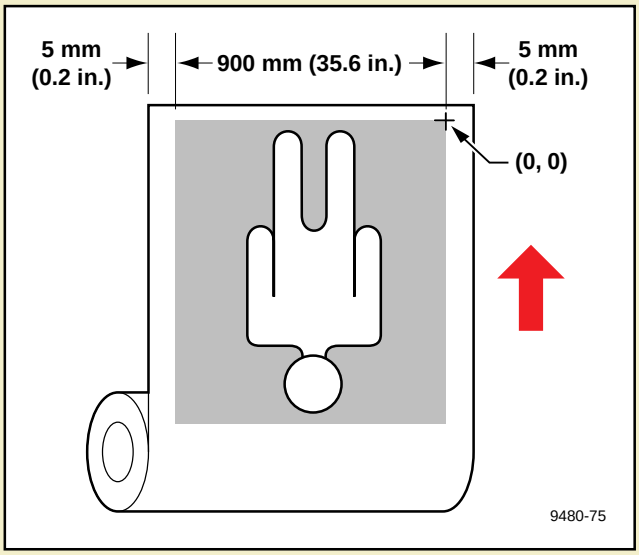


Typical use

	Orientation	Rotation
ferred)	Portrait	0° or 180°
	Landscape	90° or 270°

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nage area is the entire
size, up to the limits of the
mage's origin point (0,0) is
nedia edge. If the
size is the same width as
of the image will be



s out while making a print,
is printed when a new roll

roll is fully printable up to
oll, minus the side margins
). This illustration shows a 36-inch media roll with the maximum

u have files that do not set the page size, set the printer's default
in the front panel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

print area, and margins

printer, a wide-format printer, is capable of printing on roll media
on a variety of media sizes:

om:	Custom	175 mm x 175 mm	7 x 7 in.
	Arch E	914 x 1219 mm	36 x 48 in.
dth From:		305 mm	12 in.
		914 mm	36 in.

nter has been designed for wide-format printing, you will get the
n you use cut-sheet media that is *at least* B-size (11 x 17 in., 279 x
edia rolls *at least* 420 mm (16.5 in.) in width. Although the drivers
ect ANSI A, A4, Arch A, and custom page sizes, you cannot select
ault in the front panel. You may experience more frequent media
with the smaller media sizes.

owing topics for more information:

sizes

eet media sizes

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

sizes

Size		Print area		Margins		
c	U.S.	Metric	U.S.	Leading	Trailing	Sides
				0 mm	0 mm	5 mm (.2 in.)
: 914 mm eter: m	**Width:** 12 to 36 in. **Diameter:** 5 in. (max.)	Maximum image length: 45.7 m	Maximum image length: 150 ft.			

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

edia sizes

owing topics for more information:

eet media sizes

sheet media sizes

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Margins for U.S. and Metric cut-sheet media

Margins		
Leading	**Trailing**	**Sides**
22 mm (.9 in.)	8 mm (.33 in.)	5 mm (.2 in.)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

et media sizes

edia sizes

	Size	Print area
ANSI A*	8.5 x 11 in.	8.11 x 9.82 in.
ANSI B	11 x 17 in.	10.56 x 15.82 in.
ANSI C	17 x 22 in.	16.53 x 20.82 in.
ANSI D	22 x 34 in.	21.55 x 32.82 in.
ANSI E	34 x 44 in.	33.6 x 42.82 in.
ISO A4*	8.27 x 11.4 in.	10.56 x 15.82 in.
ISO A3	11.7 x 16.5 in.	11.2 x 15.36 in.
ISO A2	16.5 x 23.4 in.	16.1 x 22.21 in.
ISO A1	23.4 x 33.1 in.	22.9 x 31.9 in.
ISO A0	33.1 x 46.8 in.	32.64 x 45.63 in.
30 x 42 in.	30 x 42 in.	29.55 x 40.82 in.

n the front panel (cannot be selected as the default media size).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

edia sizes (cont'd.)

	Size	Print area
■ JIS B4	10.13 x 14.3 in.	9.7 x 13.15 in.
■ JIS B3	14.3 x 20.28 in.	13.87 x 19.1 in.
■ JIS B2	20.28 x 28.67 in.	19.8 x 27.49 in.
■ JIS B1	28.67 x 40.5 in.	28.27 x 39.37 in.
■ Arch A*	9 x 12 in.	8.5 x 10.8 in.
■ Arch B	12.0 x 18.0 in.	11.5 x 16.8 in.
■ Arch C	18 x 24 in.	17.6 x 22.8 in.
■ Arch D	24 x 36 in.	23.57 x 34.82 in.
■ Arch E	36 x 48 in.	35.5 x 46.82 in.

n the front panel (cannot be selected as the default media size).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

heet media sizes

media sizes

	Size	Print area
ANSI A*	216 x 279 mm	206 x 249 mm
ANSI B	279 x 432 mm	268.3 x 401 mm
ANSI C	432 x 559 mm	419.95 x 528.8 mm
ANSI D	559 x 864 mm	547.29 x 833.6 mm
ANSI E	864 x 1118 mm	853.4 x 1087.6 mm
ISO A4*	210 x 297 mm	268.3 x 401 mm
ISO A3	297 x 420 mm	284.5 x 390 mm
ISO A2	420 x 594 mm	409 x 564 mm
ISO A1	594 x 841 mm	583 x 810.94 mm
ISO A0	841 x 1189 mm	829 x 1158.9 mm
30 x 42 in.	762 x 1066 mm	750.5 x 1036.8 mm

n the front panel (cannot be selected as the default media size).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

media sizes (cont'd.)

	Size	Print area
■ JIS B4	257 x 364 mm	246.5 x 334 mm
■ JIS B3	364 x 515 mm	352.2 x 485.14 mm
■ JIS B2	515 x 728 mm	504 x 698.2 mm
■ JIS B1	728 x 1030 mm	718 x 1000 mm
■ Arch A*	228.6 x 305 mm	216.5.3 x 274.8mm
■ Arch B	305 x 457 mm	292.6 x 427.2 mm
■ Arch C	457 x 610 mm	447 x 579.63 mm
■ Arch D	610 x 914 mm	598.7 x 884.4 mm
■ Arch E	914 x 1219 mm	902.2 x 1189.2 mm

n the front panel (cannot be selected as the default media size).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

outes

ommodates a broad array of paper, film, and fabric. Tektronix offers
ne of media optimized for use with the Phaser 600 printer. For
ation, refer to Ordering printer supplies.

owing topics for information on the types of supported media and
ns for thickness and stiffness:

s

kness range

ness

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

hite Bond

de Presentation Paper

ht Film

acklit/Tracing Paper

play Film

able Adhesive Display Vinyl

sentation Canvas

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ess range

n (.003 to .020 in.)

03 to 0.020 inches

25 to 0.020 inches

010 to 0.030 inches

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SS

apable of wrapping around a 119 mm- (4.7 in.-) diameter drum
ckling, wrinkling, or other visible damage

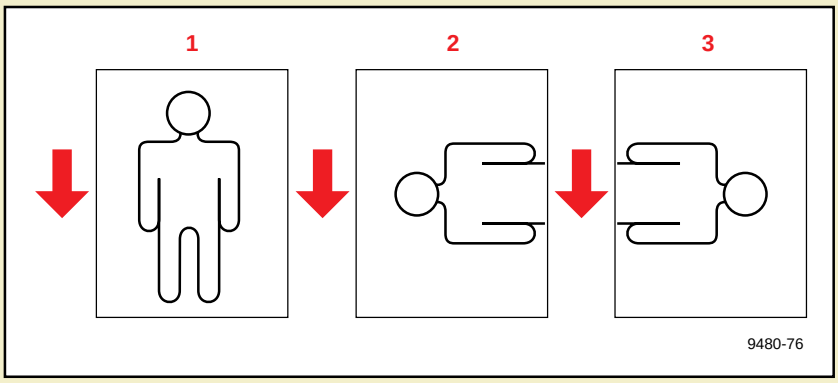
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ntation

tation refers only to how the image appears on the media relative to the or short edge. It does not refer to how the media is loaded into or fed printer.

n refers to how
ars on a print.
mage
gh your
tion or printer

op of the image
the media's



e: Top of the image aligns with media's long edge.

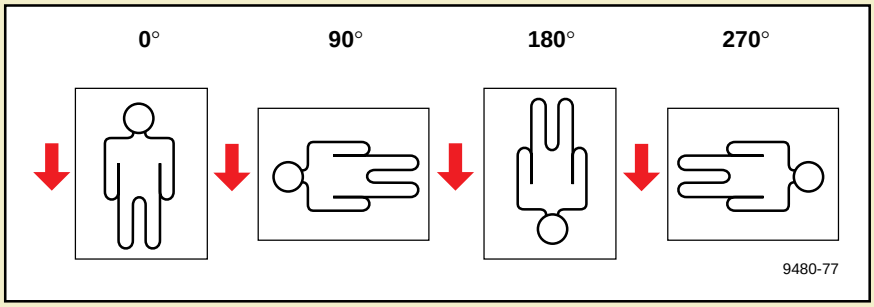
andscape: Top of the image aligns with media's long edge.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

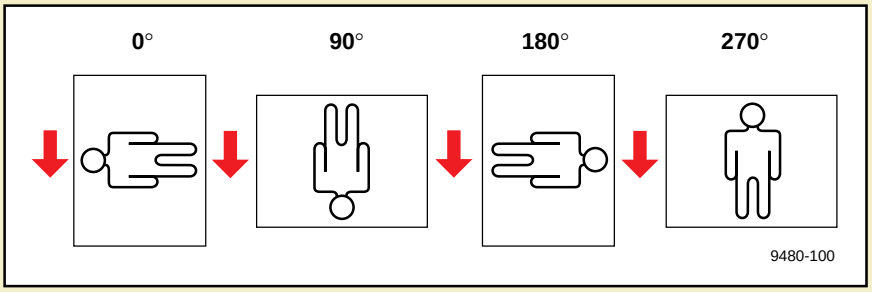
ion

ion option, selectable in the printer driver, changes the way that the
d on the paper. In this illustration, the arrow indicates the feed
ading edge.

tation



rientation



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

or 270˚ rotation with smaller page sizes on larger roll media uses
. For instance, an ANSI B (11 x 17 in.) image uses 6 inches less
en it is rotated 90˚ or 270˚.

media can be fed with the long edge first, with rotation set to 90˚
owever, do not use **Page Centering** or much of your image will

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ed: using cut-sheet media

lect **Manual Feed** in the printer driver. You can also feed the cut-sheet is needed, without selecting **Manual Feed** in the driver.

roll media by lifting the latch on the top cover. Open the paper roll wind the media completely onto the roll.

senses that roll media is installed (it looks to see if any media is covering ated under the paper roll cover), it may not print the correct image area.

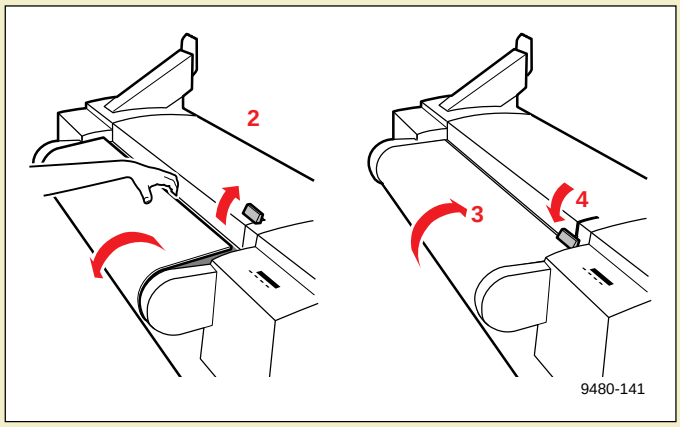
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

paper roll cover.

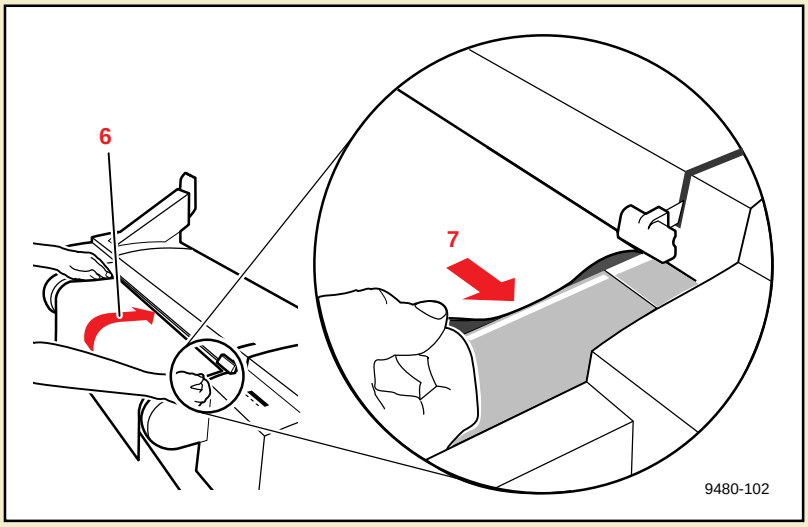
op cover latch.

media so that the print
ng *up*.

gerprints and smears,
edia by its outer edges
over the top of the *closed*
cover.

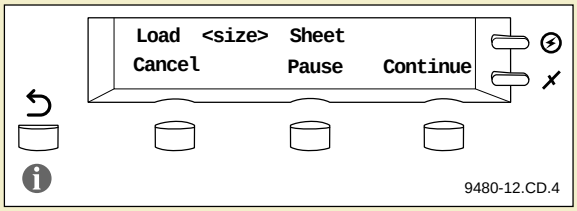


edia's right-hand
he guide line on
Insert the media
s, plus a little
ke it buckle
is ensures an
ure and reduces
of media
he printer picks
n approximately
d.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

displays this message after it
a job:



k where the printer is usually using
elect **Manual Feed** in the driver, wait for the front panel to display this
en unload the roll media and load the cut-sheet. If cut-sheet media is
e printer is connected to a single computer, you can load the cut-sheet
y time after the roll media is unloaded.

ront panel's **Continue** button; the printhead begins printing. Wait
nter ejects the first sheet before inserting another sheet.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

anipulation

ides several special options for image manipulation. Some of these cted in the drivers; some from the front panel. For a detailed ese features, refer to Printing: Beyond the Basics.

ailed ormation	Description	Default setting
e Print view.	■ Prints a thumbnail in selected orientation, spaced according to current margin settings. ■ Outline indicates the image area. ■ Available only with the Extended Features option.	Off
e Fusing Mode edia Fusing.	■ Fuses the ink to media: cold or hot; also allows you to skip the fusing operation, which may be desirable for some media types.	Cold
e Cut Media.	■ Automatically cuts media after each job, after each page, or never.	After each page

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(cont'd.)

ailed ormation	Description	Default setting
e Reprint.	■ Prints the last PostScript image as many times as the user indicates on the front panel. ■ Scales the printed image: enlarge, reduce, and scale-to-fit media ■ Available only with the Extended Features option.	Off
e Advance dia.	■ Advances media after each job, after each page, or never.	Never
e Mirror Print.	■ Inverts an image left-to-right.	Off
e Page ntering.	■ Centers a printed image on the media.	On
e Page ation.	■ Rotates the image 0˚ (none), 90˚, 180˚, or 270˚.	0˚ (none)
e Image oothing.	■ Blends adjacent colors so that color transitions are less noticeable.	Off

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nguages: PostScript, HP-GL

orts PostScript Level 1 and Level 2, and HP-GL (Hewlett-Packard age) printer languages. The default language for the parallel port is nformation on default language for other interface ports, refer to the *twork Cards and Software System Administrator Manual*.

int HP-GL files on a port set to PostScript, you must set up that hat type of data or enable Adobe IntelliSelect™ automatic language to Using Different Printer Language Modes or Tektronix' World Wide ructions.

guage selection is enabled, you can send PostScript and HP-GL led) to the printer and the printer automatically detects the type of You can change the default language so that the next time you turn is set to receive PostScript or HP-GL data on a specific port.

default values for the HP-GL parameters, such as pen color and pen you can change these values. Refer to Setting default HP-GL pen ix' World Wide Web site for instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nformation on fonts, request a document catalog from HAL or EuroHAL, automated fax systems. Refer to If you need help for information on using ns.

owing topics for more information about fonts:

pefaces (PostScript)

tended Features option

ng fonts

screen fonts

with Windows

t samplers

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

pefaces (PostScript)

epts Adobe Type 1 and Type 3 downloadable fonts, and a variety of user-defined fonts. To ability, the printer provides an internal 1-Gbyte upports a SCSI-connected external hard disk torage of additional fonts. Refer to Using SCSI orld Wide Web for more information.

er standard configuration is shipped with a set nts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tended Features option

rinter's Extended Features option,22 additional fonts are included
CD-ROM. Refer to Extended Features upgrade for more information.

nts are
ble with the
es option:

ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi Oblique

ITC Bookman Light
ITC Bookman Light Italic
ITC Bookman Demi
ITC Bookman Demi Italic

Courier
Courier Bold
Courier Oblique
Courier Bold Oblique

Helvetica
Helvetica Bold
Helvetica Oblique
Helvetica Bold Oblique

Helvetica Condensed
Helvetica Condensed Bold
Helvetica Condensed Oblique
Helvetica Condensed Bold Oblique

Helvetica Narrow
Helvetica Narrow Bold
Helvetica Narrow Oblique
Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique

New Century Schoolbook
New Century Schoolbook Bold
New Century Schoolbook Italic
New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic

Palatino
Palatino Italic
Palatino Bold
Palatino Bold Italic

Times Roman
Times Bold
Times Italic
Times Bold Italic

ITC Zapf Chancery
ITC Zapf Dingbats (☆ ✶ ✣ ✺ ❁ ❒ ❆)
Symbol (Σ ψ μ β ο λ)

9480-60

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng fonts

nt in the printer are stored in the printer as outlines and are always nting. The PostScript interpreter in the printer can also accept and fonts known as downloadable fonts. If you want to print PostScript t are not built into the printer, you can transfer or download outline computer to the printer. Downloading fonts saves print time if you eral documents or a large document using those fonts.

load a font, it is stored in the printer's memory, or on the printer's SCSI hard drive, or on an optional SCSI hard disk attached to the Using SCSI Hard Disks for more information on using an external nt storage. You can download as many outline fonts as the printer's disk allow. Adding more printer memory expands the number of e downloaded to the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

epts Type 1 and Type 3 downloadable fonts including those from
tstream, Microsoft, Apple, and many others.

accepts TrueType downloadable fonts which can be scaled to any
Type fonts look the same on the screen as they do when printed.

font from a PC or Macintosh the same way you download fonts to
rinter. Follow the documentation that was shipped with your fonts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

screen fonts

y have these fonts installed on your computer, you don't need to install

kettes and CD-ROM contain Phaser Screen Fonts for the printer.
all the screen fonts on your computer if you want to see the printer's
nt typefaces on the Macintosh screen. If you select a font the printer
e Macintosh creates a representative font for printing.

the Phaser 600 printer's diskettes or CD-ROM.

diskettes: Insert the Printer Software for Macintosh diskette
ur computer's disk drive.

M: Insert the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM into your computer's
M drive.

ck the **Phaser 600 Installer** icon. Click **Continue** until the
ll window appears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ically install the printer's screen fonts and other printer software,
l in the **Easy Install** window.

Custom Install from the pull-down menu (available with the
the CD-ROM only). Then select the **Screen Fonts** item, and
ll.

nstalled in the *Fonts* folder inside your *System Folder*.

printer font you want to use within an application and see the same
screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

with Windows

you need to make sure the fonts specified in your document are
rinter or are set up correctly in Windows. If you request a font in an
is not resident in the printer, or is not correctly installed in Windows,
d in the Courier typeface. Or, to use fonts that are not resident in
ne of the following:

downloader supplied with your font package to download the
nt to the printer.

VIN.INI file so the Windows driver automatically downloads the
need as part of a print job. Refer to your Microsoft Windows
ation for details on this procedure.

packages automatically update the PostScript port entries in
NI file when you install the fonts. Refer to the font package's
ation for instructions.

ation on using fonts with Windows, request a document catalog from
, the Tektronix automated fax systems. Refer to Using the automated
nstructions on using these systems.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

t samplers

nt sampler from a Macintosh

sample of the printer's resident fonts by downloading the *Fonts* e to the printer.

ing QuickDraw GX and System 7.5, you can print the fonts sampler from Phaser 600 GX printer driver.

sampler and utility files from either the Printer Software for Macintosh the printer's CD-ROM; see Installing printer software for Macintosh

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility in the *PhaserTools* folder on your computer's and double–click its icon to start the application.

ownload PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Font Sampler file from the list, then click **Open**. (This file was
the *Samplers* folder, inside the *PhaserTools* folder.)

ages are returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a
click **OK** to continue.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nt sampler from a PC

sample of the printer's resident fonts by downloading the *FONTS.PS* printer.

FONTS.PS file in the *SAMPLERS* directory either on the printer's r the Printer Software for Windows diskette.

ONTS.PS file to your computer's hard disk or use the file directly D-ROM.

the following methods to send the *FONTS.PS* file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer. ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File er**.)

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PRINTING: BEYOND THE BASICS

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

cusses the following topics:

th color

ctions — making the best selection

d using the color sampler charts

nting features

bystation

your Phaser 600 prints

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

with color

e producing color graphs, charts, transparencies for presentations,
e, or design comps, there are a few things to keep in mind when

ea of color looks more saturated (brighter) than a small area of
color.

ks brighter against a dark background than it does against a
ground.

k different due to the background color or to the surrounding

rance of a color varies with the type and amount of light, for
uorescent lighting versus sunlight.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

elines

cument or design simple and consistent.

ors that look good together and that reinforce your message.

r application for standard palettes to get you started.

r scheme of five or six shades, and in a series of images, use
in a consistent manner throughout the series.

to show relationships between objects, such as a range of
bjects with a similar meaning or value should be in similar colors.

and green combinations; these colors are hard for people with
color blindness to distinguish.

and blue combinations; these colors cause the eye to focus at
ngths.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rections — making the best selection

rections

Color color correction options provide simulations of different Follow these basic guidelines so that the printer accurately colors you want on your prints.

c arts purposes, there are four printing press standards to m: **SWOP Press** (Specifications for Web Offset Publications), **al Press**, **SNAP Press**, and **Euroscale Press**.

ering and scientific imaging applications, try printing with the **Display** option.

business and office printing, select the **Vivid Color** option ting.

s can be selected from printer drivers, set in the printer with tility files, or set from the printer's front panel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

orrections are performed in the printer. To use ColorSync color
Macintosh, or to use host color correction in Windows 95, refer to
r Tektronix' World Wide Web site for additional information.

or corrections do not affect colors specified in the PostScript Level 2
color standard CIE Based ABC developed by the Commission
e de l'Eclairage (International Commission on Illumination).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PhaserMatch™ custom profiles, users are now better able to match
, paper, and ink. PhaserMatch software for PC and Macintosh
es a simple approach for creating and editing color profiles. It is
e most demanding users who need to consistently and accurately
trol colors. The profiles can be created by adjusting dot gain,
ity on color reproduction curves to simulate the color output of the

rmation and instructions on using PhaserMatch software, refer to
n User Manual.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

hich color correction to use

nd computer display screens produce color differently. Printers use primaries CMYK (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black), and produce is reflected off the paper. Computers use the additive primaries , blue) with a light-emitting CRT screen. The printer and the n each have a different range of possible colors they can produce, ap between them.

ation packages specify color in different ways, for example as CMYK may give you a choice. Get to know your applications so you can ently.

lor correction options are available for a finer degree of control over single color correction option can address all uses, refer to the or the description that best fits your printing situation, and try the correction.

control of color matching, the PhaserMatch software shipped with ws you to create and customize color profiles. Refer to the *ser Manual* for detailed information and instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ction descriptions

owing topics for more information:

all color corrections

e brightest colors and a truer blue

display screen colors

tch printing press colors

gray scale

rinter's current color defaults

le color conversions

endering intents

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

l color corrections

nt to use any TekColor color corrections, you can specify no
a supported driver, or with utility files, or from the printer's front
one when you are doing the following:

lications that do their own color adjusting.

orSync on a Macintosh or host color correction in Windows 95.

ANTONE Colors.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

brightest colors and a truer blue

option makes printed blue appear less purple by reducing the
nta used to print blue colors. Other colors in the cyan-blue-purple-
n the image are also adjusted to compensate for the adjusted blue.
l-orange-yellow-green range are minimally affected. This selection
cations that do not need to simulate a printing press. It is also good
entation graphics, such as backlit media or transparencies.

usts CMYK colors using a method that adds black to other
his option prints more saturated (darker) colors and may be useful
some applications, such as CorelDRAW!. Use this option if you
a color in the CMYK system, *and* the color has a black component,
ppears lighter than you expected when printed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

splay screen colors

splay option makes printed colors closer to the colors on a standard
This selection should improve the screen-to-printer color accuracy
tions that don't perform their own color corrections. This selection
cations that define colors as RGB (red, green, blue), HLS (hue,
tion), or HSB (hue, saturation, brightness).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

h printing press colors

al printing press color correction options. Each press option
fferent printing standard. Use a press option if you are previewing
olor job to be printed on a printing press. These options simulate a
ercial printing press, *not* solid spot colors, such as PANTONE
use PhaserMatch to tailor a built-in press color correction for a

lecting PANTONE Colors in your application, use the **None** option; see
l color corrections for details. Also, use the **None** option with other color
t systems, such as EfiColor.

owing topics for more information:

ss

al Press

Press

ss

ofiles

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Inks	**Base** (paper)	**Target match**
SWOP/soy	publication	■ Specification for Web Offset Publications ■ These are specifications for color separation films and color proofing that are used to ensure the consistency of printed colors between different publications. ■ This option is typically used in the U.S., and is characterized to match 3M Matchprint® 3 publication proofs. ■ Used for high-volume, web press printing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ess

	Inks	Base (paper)	Target match
s	commercial	commercial	■ This option is typically used in the U.S., and is characterized to match 3M Matchprint 3 commercial proofs. ■ Used for high-quality, sheet-fed printing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ess

	Inks	**Base** (paper)	**Target match**
s	Euroscale	publication	■ This option is typically used in Europe, and is characterized to match the equivalent 3M Matchprint 3 proof.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Inks	**Base** (paper)	**Target match**
SNAP	newsprint	■ Specifications for Non-Heat Advertising Printing ■ This is a set of production standards for printing on uncoated and newsprint papers. ■ This option is targeted to match typical colors for this type of printing in the U.S. ■ Use this option if you are previewing work for a non-heat web offset printing press using newsprint paper.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

iles

	Inks	Base (paper)	Target match
es	n/a	n/a	■ Create custom profiles in the PhaserMatch application to fine-tune the printing press color corrections. ■ Refer to the *PhaserMatch User Manual* for instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ay scale

ne option prints your color image as a monochrome gray scale
from black to white).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nter's current color defaults

Setting option is available in supported drivers. This option sends on information to the printer. It uses the current default in the printer s for printing. The printer's default can be one of the following:

selected in the **TekColor Corrections** menu on the printer's .

color correction utility files sent to the printer.

ch can download custom profiles to the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

color conversions

lity files use Adobe's standard color conversions to tell the printer
put device you want it to simulate:

K Colors (*RAWCMYK.PS*): Converts all colors (CMYK, RGB,
CMYK colors. Use this file if your application specifies colors as
an, magenta, yellow, and black).
s you control the CMYK output of the printer's colors without
TekColor color corrections.

Colors (*RAWRGB.PS*): Converts all colors (CMY, CMYK, grays)
ors. Use this file if your application specifies colors as RGB
, and blue). This file lets you control the CMY output of the
olors without using any TekColor color corrections.

g Printer Utilities for instructions on installing and using the utility files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ndering intents

ring intents are designed for use with images containing colors PostScript Level 2 international color standard, CIE XYZ, which was e Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage (International llumination).

ering intent provides a specific type of color matching.

g Intent Absolute

g Intent Relative

g Intent Saturation

g Intent Perceptual

lor rendering intents for details.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nsiderations

owing topics for more information:

ser 600 printer is shared on a network

color corrections

sing an unsupported driver

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

er 600 printer is shared on a network

ay use the downloadable color correction utility files, or the printer's
hange the printer's default color correction setting. If this situation
ts you make through a non-supported driver may not print as
r to Sharing the printer on a network for details on how the color
act with the driver settings for either supported or non-supported

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

olor corrections

ns perform color corrections to improve screen-to-printer color
TekColor color correction options in the supported drivers adjust
nter after the application has performed its color corrections.

cation uses CIE (Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage)
TekColor corrections will *not* be applied.

ct a TekColor color correction option in a driver other than **None**,
on may override some application features.

ne of the TekColor color correction options in a supported driver
nted results are not what you expected, then select the **None**
try reprinting your image.

None TekColor color correction option in a supported driver if
ing ColorSync color matching on a Macintosh, or host color
in Windows 95 (refer to Color Matching or Tektronix' World Wide

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng an unsupported driver

ing one of the printer drivers shipped with the printer, or another
er, then use the downloadable utility files or the printer's front panel
orrections; see Using the Front Panel and Downloading files to the
s.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

and using the color sampler charts

lor sampler charts from your printer to see how the colors, as within an application, will look when printed. Having a pre-printed olor can help you save time in selecting the right color for your use.

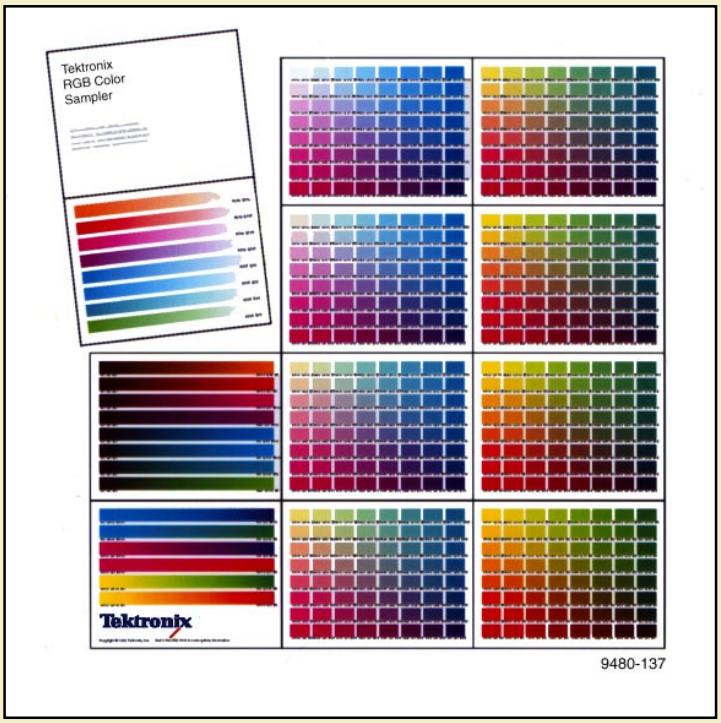
or sampler files are available from a variety of sources, according to le:

harts	Accessing the charts		
hart	**Print from CD-ROM and Diskettes**	**or**	**Download from World Wide Web**
ellow, and	See Printing the Color Sampler Charts.		Visit the Tektronix web site: **http://www.tek.com/Color_Printers/ support/** or use PhaserLink software to print sampler charts from your web browser.
art			
lue			
rt			
nd model			
er chart			

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

, and HSB Samplers
s ANSI A- (Letter-)
t two are printed on
NSI B (Tabloid) or
ou can either use
or roll media. When
lia, you can save
g the image 90˚ or
s automatically select
edia size; do not
A media.

Sampler prints only
ges. You can either
-sized cut-sheets or
media. Setting **Page**
or 270˚, you use less



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rinting features

owing topics for more information:

Mode / Media Fusing

ia

ntering

moothing

eview

- Advance Media
- Mirror Print
- Page Rotation
- Fast Preview
- Color Control Strip
- Custom page sizes

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

le / Media Fusing

lected in supported printer drivers and from the front panel (Media
It determines whether and in what manner the print is fused. You
ion with all media types, and with both cut-sheet and roll media.

ult) Flattens the dots of color, which makes colors appear
n if **Media Fusing** is set to **None**. Colors that are cold-fused are
tant to flaking than non-fused colors.

tens the ink and flattens the printed dots of color, making the
e resilient than with cold fusing. When using roll media,
overrides the **Advance Media** option, and adds 225 mm
nes) of blank media after each page is printed, if cutting is

With fusing turned off, printing completes more quickly;
ble banding and offsetting from the fuser are eliminated.
prints may look lighter than when hot- or cold-fused, with more
er visible around the printed dots of color. Inks may be less
hey are not fused.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

is selected, the only available option for **Advance Media** is **Fusing**. Refer to Advance Media for more information.

ng behaves differently with different media types (some media ce degraded print quality with fusing). Experiment until you get sults. Tektronix-supplied media usually look best with g.

using is selected (or de-selected), the printer goes into a or cool-down) period for approximately 15 minutes. If hot fusing selected, the printer's warm-up time also increases when the urned on or comes out of standby mode.

ot have a supported printer driver, you can use the PostScript shipped on the printer's CD-ROM or diskettes. Refer to ng files to the printer for instructions on downloading utility files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

edia

lected in supported printer drivers and used *only* with roll media.
the media is advanced is measured in points; the default advance
s (25.4 mm, 1 inch), but it can be changed to your specification with
ty file that is shipped on the printer's CD-ROM or diskettes.

f (*default*)
page after another without adding extra space after any pages.

n Job / Per Job
the media only after the last page of a job is printed.

n Page / Per Page
the media after each page is printed.

Fusing
ally selected if the **Fusing Mode** option is set to **Hot**. Advances
omatically after each page is printed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng Mode is set to **Cold**, **None**, or **Printer's Default**, the
ptions for **Advance Media** are **Never**, **After Each Job**, and
n Page.

option for **Fusing Mode** is selected, the printer automatically
ow Hot Fusing for the **Advance Media** option; the other options
ailable.

ot have the Phaser 600 printer driver, you can use the PostScript
shipped on the printer's CD-ROM or diskettes. Refer to
ng files to the printer for instructions on downloading utility files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

elected in supported printer drivers or from the front panel in the menu. It is used *only* with roll media.

f

does not automatically cut the media. This keeps the images n the media roll, which is useful for processes such as

n Job / Per Job

automatically cuts the media only after the last page of a job is

n Page / Per Page (*default*)

automatically cuts the media after each page is printed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

edia do not cut well or may require that the automatic (internal)
eplaced more frequently. Because thick or fiber-based media
ce, artist's canvas) can be difficult to cut, you may want to turn
omatic cutting.

selection overrides the front panel default.

ot have a supported printer driver, use the PostScript utility files
n the printer's CD-ROM or diskettes. Refer to Downloading files to
for instructions on downloading utility files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

lected in supported printer drivers. **Mirror Print** inverts an image
re printing.

lt)

nt is useful when printing on transparency film, so that the
face can be protected when mounted.

ot have a supported printer driver, you can use the PostScript
shipped on the printer's CD-ROM or diskettes. Refer to
ng files to the printer for instructions on downloading utility files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ering

ilable only in supported printer drivers, centers the requested page
al page size of the media. For roll media, the image is centered
e. For cut-sheet media, the image is centered from side-to-side and
om.

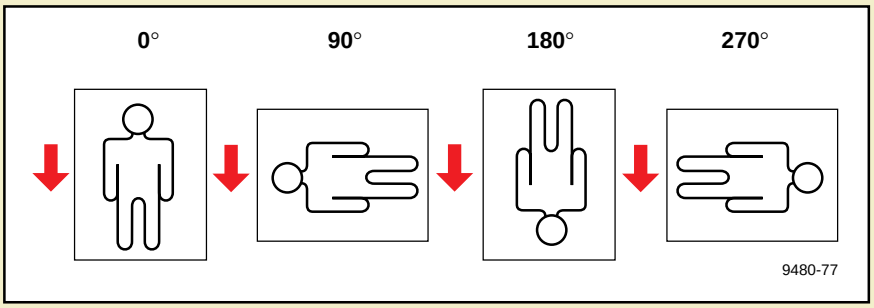
t)

select **Page Centering**, make sure that media is already loaded
ding a job to the printer. If media is not loaded, the printer uses
media size (the front panel setting) to calculate the center
Depending on the default setting and the requested size, the
be clipped or missing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ion

ion option, selectable in supported printer drivers, changes the way
s marked on the paper.



n, the arrow indicates the leading edge of the media (the leading
of the media that enters the printer first).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

n image 90° or 270° is useful for printing a small image on large
example, a Tabloid-size image on a 36-inch (914 mm) media

n image 180° changes the top and bottom margins on cut-sheet
ative to the image.

ot have a supported printer driver, you can use the PostScript
shipped on the printer's CD-ROM or diskettes. Refer to
ng files to the printer for instructions on downloading utility files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

othing

ng is selected from the printer's front panel (in the Printer Defaults
s in supported printer drivers. **Image Smoothing** blends adjacent
ge so that color transitions are less noticeable.

ypically used when the image being printed is at a lower resolution
s output resolution. For example, printing an image downloaded
Wide Web at 72 dpi using the printer's 300 dpi. Images printed
noothing appear with less sharp detail but with smoother color
ge Smoothing does not affect images at 150 dpi or higher. Due to
lculations, printing may take longer with **Image Smoothing** on.

lt)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ot have a supported printer driver, you can use the PostScript
shipped on the printer's CD-ROM or diskettes. Refer to
ng files to the printer for instructions on downloading utility files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

W

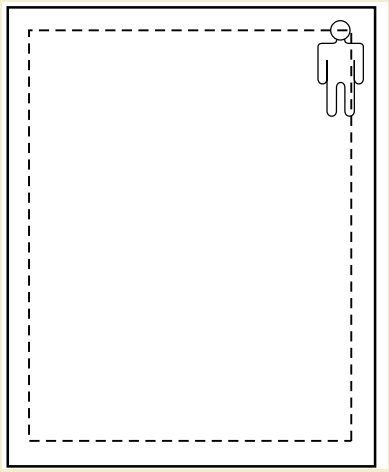
w option is only available for the Photoshop plug-ins. It produces a
ur image with slightly reduced image quality. This option reflects
tion you have selected for this image.

esolution images, you can improve the print quality of **Fast**
rints by activating the **Image Smoothing** option.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

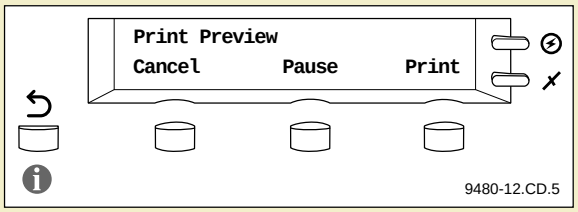
ew

eatures option, selected in supported printer drivers, prints a small
n of the job's first page. The image is reduced by one-fifth in height
Tabloid-size (11 x 17 in.), or its Metric equivalent, whichever is
ed outline indicates the full-sized image and its placement.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

w image is printed, the printer's front panel displays this message
er interaction:



cel Ends the Print Preview, returning the printer to **Ready.**

se Enters the Pause menu, which allows you to print the image at a different scale. Scale selections include:

- **25%** to **400%**
- **Scale to Fit**, which automatically scales the preview image to fit the media installed in the printer or, if media is not installed, the front panel selection.

t Prints the full-size image and all subsequent pages of the print job.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

lt)

r waits a set amount of time for the user to press a front panel
no button is pressed in that time, the job is cancelled and the
urns to **Ready**.

t timeout is 15 minutes; to change the default, use the PostScript
hat is available from Technical Support.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ol Strip

en selected in a supported printer driver, prints a band of colors
n edge of your print. The color control strip is useful for checking
of printed colors between prints made on the same printer, or
made on more than one of the same type or model of printer.

lt)

l strip has these qualities/features:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ne printer's eight primary and secondary colors:

- Red (magenta and yellow)
- Green (cyan and yellow)
- Blue (cyan and magenta)
- Black (cyan, magenta, and yellow)

is printed at 100% saturation (brightness) and 50% saturation.

strip includes the following information:

me*

me of printing*

rofile
rrently selected Tekcolor correction or PhaserMatch
profile)

e present on the Color Control Strip if the driver supplies certain
ot information (some drivers do not).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ction is available in the front panel's Pause menu if an Extended is installed. It allows you to reprint the last PostScript image with tions:

es an image up to 400% of the original size; an A-size image can ed to E-size.

es an image to a minimum of 5% of the original size; an E-size can be scaled down to A-size.

o Fit, which automatically scales the image to fit the media d in the printer or, if media is not installed, the front panel on.

you to specify the number of copies you want printed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ge sizes

t support the Phaser 600 printer allow you to set custom page sizes
e selection area.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

opystation

ystation adds easy-to-use, walk-up color copying capability to the ter. Images scanned on the Copystation are sent to the printer SCSI connection. The Copystation is fully compatible with other uch as an external SCSI font disk.

owing topics for more information:

nts and suggested memory configuration

the Copystation

print quantity

ages from the Copystation

interactions

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nts and suggested memory configuration

capability, the Phaser 600 requires the Extended Features option.
der additional memory (16 Mbytes or 32 Mbytes) for improved
or information on ordering a Copystation, refer to Phaser Copystation
540). For information on ordering additional memory, refer to
.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the Copystation

ystation User Manual is shipped with the Copystation; it contains
ions for connecting and using the Copystation with your printer.
in mind when connecting the Copystation:

n off the power to the printer and all SCSI devices before making
ns.

r and Copystation have built-in SCSI termination. If other SCSI
e also connected to the printer, make sure that the Copystation
device in the chain, and that the other devices' terminators are

that there are no conflicts in SCSI ID numbers for any of the
ces connected to the printer. The Copystation uses SCSI ID
and **6**; the printer uses SCSI ID numbers **7** and **4**.

n on SCSI peripheral devices (the Copystation and external
east one minute before turning on the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

print quantity

's front panel allows you to specify the number of copies you want printer:

of Copies button on the Copystation; use the keypad to enter the copies you want.

Copy button.

sting multiple copies of an image, always use the Copystation's command; the printer's front panel Copies function is unavailable.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ages from the Copystation

aling

r's front panel selection for Media Size matches the size of media n the printer, an image sent from the Copystation is automatically the media's printable image area.

ng

ge by a specific amount, use the Copystation's **Scale** function:

he size of an image so that it is smaller than the installed media's rea.

r reduces the image by a specific amount; also used when the 's media size setting does not match the installed media.

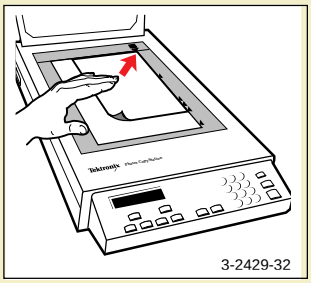
ng an image from the Copystation to the printer, always use the s **Scale** command; the printer's front panel Scale function does not affect output.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

est results

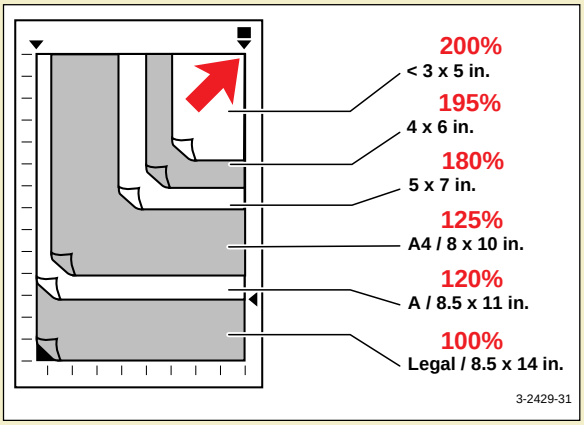
n image (for example, an 8 x 10 in. photograph) on the Phaser
re-determined scale percentages, and your printer ***automatically***
ut to fit the selected media size.

ont panel — set the ***default page size*** for the
by size.



riginal image on the Copystation, starting in the
t corner.

n's front panel — select the
rcentage based on these



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

interactions

make on the Copystation are automatically scaled to fit the default or the printer, regardless of the media that is loaded in the printer. If ault media size setting differs from the installed media, your image expected. The default media size selected in the printer's front atch the actual media loaded in the printer.:

ected in l	Media used		Results*
x 16 in.	ANSI C	16.6 x 21 in.	Image does not fill the image area.
x 21 in.	ANSI C	16.6 x 21 in.	Image correctly fills the image area.
x 33 in.	ANSI C	16.6 x 21 in.	Image is cropped at the boundaries of the media's printable image area.

Copystation is set for **100%** scale.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nedia size in one of the following ways:

el

e selections in the Media Defaults menu.

ed utility file

ownloading files to the printer or the World Wide Web for
s on downloading a utility file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ze images on A-size media

ault media size cannot be set to A-size, nor can A-size be selected ont panel. If you are copying an A-size image to print out on A-size ese steps:

ter's front panel, access the Media Size selections in the Media enu.

I B, which is the smallest media size selectable from the front

ystation's front panel, press the **Scale** button.

keypad on the Copystation, enter **83%** (the amount necessary to ize image to A-size).

eed an A-size sheet of media into the printer.

em to be copied on the scanner window at the lowest, right-most

Copystation's **Copy** button to make a print.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng your Phaser 600 prints

your wide format prints using commercially available,
ve and warm temperature (under 200˚ C) lamination media. For
performance, Tektronix offers specially formulated lamination
ed to produce high quality, durable prints. You can use Tektronix
rial to laminate Phaser 600 output on any commercially available
minator that meets the feature list in the following table.

ure description	Specification
ize	37 inches (940 mm) wide 6.8 inches (173 mm) outside diameter
r pressure roller temperature	195˚ F (90.5˚ C)
r pressure roller temperature	Ambient
nator speed	0.65 inches (16.5 mm) per second
ressure	Minimum setting for best print quality
up spool	Requires release liner take-up spool

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

inating prints

nix Smooth White Bond or Photo Grade Presentation papers and amination Film for best results. Refer to Ordering printer supplies g information.

nator is equipped with cooling fans, use them to reduce the of curled prints.

inator's nip pressure low enough to avoid ink smear and amage to laminator pressure rollers.

sults, set the printer's fusing mode to **Cold** when prints are to be

of canvas material is not recommended.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printing the Color Sampler Charts

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

sampler charts available for your printer. The charts are designed to colors within an application that can be reproduced on your printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

oler chart consists of colored rectangles with the component values You can select colors within an application using the component nent values are percentages of colors (cyan, magenta, yellow, and n, and blue; hue, saturation, and brightness) that are combined to ar color.

you print and use depends on how the application you are using efer to the application's documentation for information on color rint one or more of the available color charts.

owing topics for more information:

olor charts

the printer

m a Macintosh

m a PC

NE Color chart is described in Using PANTONE® Color Files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

color charts

er charts print Letter-size pages 2-up on B-size (tabloid) paper. The sts the number of Letter-size pages and the corresponding number of paper required to print these charts.

or sampler chart		Number of pages	Number of B-size prints
YK mpler	Prints a sample of colors in the CMYK (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black) color model.	18	9
B mpler	Prints a sample of colors in the RGB (red, green, and blue) color model.	12	6
B mpler	Prints a sample of colors in the HSB (hue, saturation, and brightness) color model.	12	6

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

p the printer

er charts print Letter-size pages 2-up on B-size (tabloid) paper. You olor sampler chart on separate sheets of B-size paper, or on a t of roll paper to create a wall chart. You can also cut each for placement in a binder for easy reference.

owing topics for setup instructions:

sing manual feed media

sing roll media

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

sing manual feed media

(tabloid) sheets of paper for the most efficient use of paper.

ia Size: ANSI B on the printer's front panel.

l media from the input slot.

dual sheets into the media input slot at the front panel prompt.

d subsequent sheets until the previous print has completed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

sing roll media

per that is at least 12 inches wide. The narrower the roll, the less asted.

lia Size: ANSI B on the printer's front panel.

the charts to print in a continuous banner, select **Media Cutting:** the printer's front panel.

ant to set page rotation to 90-degrees to save paper. To make this use the printer utility files shipped with the printer.

osh: Use the *Page Rotation 90* file. See Installing the files and eed to download a utility file for instructions.

se the *ROTATE90.PS* file. See Installing the files and eed to download a utility file for instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rom a Macintosh

owing topics for more information:

e files

reparations

color charts

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e files

er chart files for the Macintosh are located on the Phaser 600
M and diskettes.

nstructions in Macintosh software to install the printer's software.
y Install to automatically install the software, or select a printer
n as the *Adobe PSPrinter* driver, **and** the *Samplers* item in the
stall window.

elect color corrections from the printer's front panel. However, if
o select color corrections with downloadable utility files, also
Printer Utilities item in the **Custom Install** window. (You may
e utility files if the printer is some distance away from you, or if
t using one of the provided drivers.)

files in the *Samplers* folder, inside the *PhaserTools* folder created
rd disk by the installer application.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

reparations

on the charts to colors selected within an application, use the same rection to print the charts that you are going to use when selecting se colors within an application.

a supported driver

r chart with either the **Vivid Color** front panel selection, or the utility file downloaded to the printer.

an application with the driver's **Vivid Color** option selected.

a non-supported driver

r chart with either the **Vivid Color** front panel selection, or the utility file downloaded to the printer.

an application with either the **Vivid Color** front panel selection, or *olor* utility file downloaded to the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ble lists the driver color correction selections with their
tility files and front panel settings.

ection to use

nt his er	**Then print the chart with the corresponding color correction set either with a utility file downloaded to the printer, or selected from the printer's front panel**	
	Macintosh utility file name	**Printer's front panel selection (TekColor Corrections menu)**
	Simulate Display	*Display*
	Vivid Color	*Vivid Color*
g	(any color correction utility file)*	(any front panel color setting)*
	Commercial Press *Euroscale Press* *SWOP Press* *SNAP Press*	*Commercial* *Euroscale* *SWOP* *SNAP*
	No Color Correction	*None*

correction to print the chart and later to print the colors from an application.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

color charts

ing QuickDraw GX, you can print the color charts from the Tektronix
GX printer driver; see Downloading printer utilities for instructions.

ng the files to install the samplers and utility files from the
printer's CD-ROM.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

up the printer to load media.

ch color correction you need to use; see Important preparations for

selecting a color correction from the printer's front panel

kColor Corrections menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

d to download a utility file

the *LaserWriter Utility* in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard
nd double–click its icon to start the application.

e **Download PostScript File** from the **Utilities** menu.

a color correction file from the list, then click **Open**. (These files
stalled in the *Printer Utilities* folder, inside the *PhaserTools*

prompt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file
or saving printer output. Use either the default name given in the
x or type a new name.
ave to send the file to the printer.

tput is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a
box; click **OK** to continue.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

olor sampler chart, do the following:

the *LaserWriter Utility* in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard
d double–click its icon to start the application.

Download PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

he color sampler chart file from the list, then click **Open**. (The
ampler chart files were installed in the *Samplers* folder, inside
aserTools folder.)

prompt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file
or saving printer output. Use either the default name given in the
x or type a new name.
ave to send the file to the printer.

tput is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a
box; click **OK** to continue.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rs within an application using the colors on the chart.

locument using one of the following methods:

are printing from a supported driver: Print your document
supported printer driver (such as the Phaser 600 GX or
riter 8.x) with the same color correction option selected in the
hat you used with a downloaded utility file or on the printer's front
o print the chart. Any other color correction selection in the
an cause the colors to print differently.

are not using a supported driver: Print your document with the
ownloaded utility file or front panel color correction you used to
e chart. Any other color correction selection can cause the
o print differently.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rom a PC

owing topics for more information:

ne files

reparations

e color charts

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e files

nstructions in PC/Windows software to install the printer's software.
y Install to automatically install the software, or select the *Samplers*
Custom Install: Utilities window.

elect color corrections from the printer's front panel. However, if
o select color corrections with downloadable utility files, also
Printer Utilities item in the **Custom Install: Utilities** window.
need to use utility files if the printer is some distance away from
ou are not using one of the provided drivers.)

files in the *SAMPLERS* subdirectory, inside the *PHSRTOOL*
reated on your hard disk by the installer application.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

reparations

on the charts to colors selected within an application, use the same rection to print the charts that you are going to use when selecting se colors within an application.

a supported driver

r chart with either the **Vivid Color** front panel selection, or the (*VIVDCOLR.PS*) utility file downloaded to the printer.

an application with the driver's **Vivid Color** option selected.

a non-supported driver

r chart with either the **Vivid Color** front panel selection, or the (*VIVDCOLR.PS*) utility file downloaded to the printer.

an application with either the **Vivid Color** front panel selection, or *olor* (*VIVDCOLR.PS*) utility file downloaded to the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ble lists the driver color correction settings with their corresponding ont panel settings.

ection to use

nt his er	**Then print the chart with the corresponding color correction set either with a utility file downloaded to the printer, or selected from the printer's front panel**	
ion	**PC utility file name**	**Printer's front panel selection (TekColor Corrections menu)**
	DISPLAY.PS	*Display*
	VIVDCOLR.PS	*Vivid Color*
g	(any color correction utility file)*	(any front panel color setting)*
	COMRCIAL.PS *EUROSCAL.PS* *SWOPRESS.PS* *SNAPRESS.PS*	*Commercial* *Euroscale* *SWOP* *SNAP*
	NOCORECT.PS	*None*

correction to print the chart and later to print the colors from an application.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

color charts

ng the files to locate the color sampler charts.

g up the printer to load media.

ch color correction you need to use; see Important preparations

selecting a color correction from the printer's front panel

kColor Corrections menu.

d to download a utility file

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer. ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File er**.)

ation users: Send a color correction file to the printer as you any PostScript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

r sampler chart using one of the following methods:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

rs within an application using the colors on the chart.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

locument using one of the following methods:

are printing from a supported driver: Print your document
supported printer driver (in Windows 95 or Windows 3.1) with
he color correction option selected in the driver that you used
lownloaded utility file or on the front panel to print the chart. Any
olor correction selection in the driver can cause the colors to
fferently.

are not using a supported driver: Print your document with the
ownloaded utility file or front panel color correction you used to
e chart. Any other color correction selection can cause the
o print differently.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

COLOR MATCHING

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ur computer type

owing topics for more information:

rSync on a Macintosh

color correction in Windows 95

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

lorSync on a Macintosh

a color matching system that attempts to match the
o the printer's colors. The software for the Phaser 600 printer
er profile that contains specific color information required

ts an image's colors on the computer. The TekColor color
st an image's colors in the printer. You should use only one method
g at a time, or you may get unexpected results. For more
olor matching options, see Color corrections — making the best

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nc color matching, you need to do the following:

taller application on the printer's CD-ROM to install the printer's
ee Macintosh software for instructions. Either select **Easy Install**,
ustom Install window, select the following items:

he *Adobe PSPrinter Driver* or the *LaserWriter 8.x Driver*

nter Descriptions option

lorSync Profile option.

driver:

he **Chooser** from the Apple menu.

he LaserWriter 8.x driver or the Adobe PSPrinter driver.

your printer in the list.

e **Setup** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rrect PPD file should be selected automatically.

PD file is not selected automatically, the Printer Descriptions
box opens showing the location of the PPD files you installed in
Select one of the following *PPD* files:

the *TKPH6001.PPD* file with the standard version of the printer.

the *TKP600P1.PPD* file with the printer's extended features
on.

t sure which printer configuration you have, press and hold down the
the printer's front panel. Printer information appears on the lower line of

e **Select** button.

K, then close the **Chooser**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

pple menu, select **Control Panels**.

orSync System Profile, and select the profile for your monitor.
Control Panel.

t from the **File** menu.

t dialog box, click **Options**.

t Options dialog box, make the following selections:

Print pop-up menu, select one of the following:

ync Color Matching: Color conversions are done by the
ter.

ript Color Matching: Color conversions are done by the
this selection has a longer processing time.

your printer in the **Printer Profile** pop-up menu.

None in the **Color Corrections** pop-up menu.

K.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

in the **Print** dialog box.

ors are not what you expected, refer to Printing: Beyond the Basics for
ation about color.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

st color correction in Windows 95

orrection is available only with Windows 95.

from the host (your computer) attempts to match the screen's colors olors. The software for the Phaser 600 printer includes a profile that c color information required by the host color correction system.

an image's colors on the computer, or use the TekColor color djust an image's colors in the printer. You should use only one color od at a time, or you may get unexpected results.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

lor correction, do the following steps:

t/Windows software for instructions on installing a PostScript printer Windows 95. The printer's color profile is automatically installed with

ters window, move the cursor over the Phaser 600 printer icon, and ght mouse button.

u that appears, click **Properties**; the **Properties** dialog box

raphics tab.

r Control field, select the **Use image color matching** option, then **hoose image color matching method** button.

ge Color Matching dialog box, select **Perform image color on the host**, and click **OK**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

evice Options tab to see the following options:

olor Correction in the **Printer features** field.

e in the **Change setting for: Color Correction** field.

hen finished.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USING PANTONE® COLOR FILES

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

overview

t information on color libraries, call Tektronix Customer Support in the nada at **1-800-835-6100**. Outside the U.S. and Canada, contact your ix reseller.

s for your printer include color library files for use with specific d a PANTONE Color sampler chart.

owing topics for more information:

antone files

PANTONE Color templates

e PANTONE Color sampler chart

ntone Colors from an application

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pantone files

ne Macintosh files

ne PC files

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e Macintosh files

Color files are available on the printer's CD-ROM.

rinter's CD-ROM, use the Installer application to install a printer
n as the Adobe PSPrinter driver, **and** the *Pantone Files* item in the
stall window. See Macintosh software for details.

going to be printing the entire PANTONE Color sampler chart,
the *Printer Utilities* item in the Custom Install window.

going to be viewing and printing selected pages of the
Color sampler chart, also install the *Acrobat Reader* from the
stall window.

files in the *Pantone Files* folder, inside the *PhaserTools* folder
your hard disk by the installer application.

one overview to return to the main topics list.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e PC files

Color files are available on the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM and on
are for Windows diskette.

rinter's CD-ROM or diskette, use the Installer application to install
e Files item in the **Custom Install: Utilities** window. See
ws software for details.

going to be printing the entire PANTONE Color sampler chart,
the *Printer Utilities* item in the **Custom Install: Utilities** window.

going to be viewing and printing selected pages of the
Color sampler chart, also install the *Acrobat Reader* from the
stall: Utilities window.

files in the *PANTONE* subdirectory, inside the *PHSRTOOL* directory
your hard disk by the installer application.

e following topics for more information:

one overview to return to the main topics list.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e PANTONE Color templates

Macintosh templates

PC library files

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Macintosh templates

owing topics for more information:

trator 3.0 (Macintosh)

trator 5.0 (Macintosh)

Hand 4.0 (Macintosh)

eMaker 5.0 (Macintosh)

eMaker 6.0 (Macintosh)

verview to return to the main topics list.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ator 3.0 (Macintosh)

Phaser 600.ai file is used by the application to properly specify
s for the Phaser 600 printer.

ng the Macintosh files if you haven't already installed the files.

PANTONE® Phaser 600.ai file in the *Pantone Files* folder, inside the
s folder on your hard disk.

ANTONE® Phaser 600.ai file to the *Illustrator* application folder on
disk.

e as a template to create documents for printing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ator 5.0 (Macintosh)

Phaser 600.ai file is used by the application to properly specify
s for the Phaser 600 printer.

ng the Macintosh files if you haven't already installed the files.

PANTONE® Phaser 600.ai file in the *Pantone Files* folder, inside the
s folder on your hard disk.

ANTONE® Phaser 600.ai file to the *Illustrator* application folder on
disk.

ator.

port Styles from the **File** menu in Illustrator and import the
® *Phaser 600.ai* file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

and 4.0 (Macintosh)

Phaser 600.acf file is used by the application to properly specify
s for the Phaser 600 printer.

ng the Macintosh files if you haven't already installed the files.

PANTONE® Phaser 600.acf file in the *Pantone Files* folder, inside
Tools folder on your hard disk.

PANTONE® Phaser 600.acf file in the *Color* folder, in the *Aldus*
de the *System Folder*.

land.

olorlist window choose **Options**, **Import** and select *PANTONE®*
0.acf.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

laker 5.0 (Macintosh)

Phaser 600.acf file is used by the application to properly specify
s for the Phaser 600 printer.

ng the Macintosh files if you haven't already installed the files.

PANTONE® Phaser 600.acf file in the *Pantone Files* folder, inside
Tools folder on your hard disk.

PANTONE® Phaser 600.acf file in the *Color* folder, in the *Aldus*
de the *System Folder*.

Maker.

ement, **Define Colors**, **New, Libraries**, then select *PANTONE®*
0.acf.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maker 6.0 (Macintosh)

Phaser 600.acf file is used by the application to properly specify
s for the Phaser 600 printer.

ng the Macintosh files if you haven't already installed the files.

PANTONE® Phaser 600.acf file in the *Pantone Files* folder, inside
Tools folder on your hard disk.

PANTONE® Phaser 600.acf file in the *Color* folder, in the *RSRC*
de the *Adobe PageMaker 6.0* folder.

Maker.

ement, **Define Colors**, **New, Libraries**, then select *PANTONE®*
0.acf.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PC library files

owing topics for more information:

trator 3.0 and 4.02 (PC)

eMaker 5.0 (PC)

W! (PC)

verview to return to the main topics list.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ator 3.0 and 4.02 (PC)

file lets you customize PANTONE Colors for Adobe Illustrator and a
ter. This file is application-specific and printer-specific.

ng the PC files if you haven't already installed the files.

EK_600.AI file in Adobe Illustrator's *Color* directory.

ustrator application.

le or image you want to use.

ile menu, select the **Open** command.

g box that appears, locate the directory and file location of the
I file, and open the file.

are working on an image, use the **Paint** menu and either the **Paint**
ustom Color commands to select PANTONE Colors.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

laker 5.0 (PC)

CF file is used by the application to properly specify PANTONE
haser 600 printer.

ng the PC files if you haven't already installed the files.

TEK_600.ACF file in the *USENGLSH\COLOR* directory in the *Aldus*
directory.

Maker.

ement, **Define Colors**, **New, Libraries**, then select the Phaser 600
brary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(PC)

AL file is used by the CorelDRAW! application to properly specify
s for a Phaser 600 printer. This file is application-specific and

ng the PC files if you haven't already installed the files.

TEK_600.PAL file in the Corel application's directory.

lDRAW!.

locument you want to work in.

tem you want filled with a PANTONE Color, then select the **Fill tool**
bucket).

Fill tool icon again, then select the **Open** button under **Palette**.

g box under **Path**, specify the location of the *TEK_600.PAL* file.

s, select the *TEK_600.PAL* file and select the **Load** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

he PANTONE Color sampler chart

NE Color sampler chart for your printer to select colors within an allows you to specify PANTONE Colors. For more information on Colors, see the related topics on the Tektronix World Wide Web **www.tek.com/Color_Printers/**.

ays to print the PANTONE Color sampler chart for your ter:

PANTONE® Phaser 600.pdf (*PANT600.PDF*) file in Adobe's eader application, and print the pages you want:
ividual pages from Acrobat

the *PANTONE® Phaser 600.ps* (*PANT600.PS*) file to the printer to ntire sampler chart (46 pages in length):
e entire chart

e color correction in a driver, or the *No Color Correction* downloadable **TekColor:None** on the printer's front panel, when printing the PANTONE er chart or when printing PANTONE Colors from an application. Using lor correction will cause PANTONE Colors to print incorrectly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ividual pages from Acrobat

e *PANTONE® Phaser 600.pdf* (*PANT600.PDF*) file in Adobe's application, and print just the pages you want. Make sure you print the same media you will be using for final prints. For best results, er supplied by Tektronix.

m Acrobat (Macintosh)

m Acrobat (PC)

verview to return to the main topics list.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Acrobat (Macintosh)

nstall the *Pantone Files* from the printer's CD-ROM, also install the *eader Alias* from the Custom Install window; see Installing the files for instructions.

Acrobat Reader Alias in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk, e-click the alias; the original source on the printer's CD-ROM opens.

on-screen instructions to install Acrobat Reader onto your

bat Reader is installed, locate the *PANTONE® Phaser 600.pdf* file in *e Files* folder, inside the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk. k the file to launch Acrobat Reader and open the file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rint pages from the color sampler chart file as desired. You can
eed Letter-size media or use roll media.

**printing from a supported driver (such as Adobe PSPrinter
600 GX):**

document with the following selections. Any other selections in
will cause the PANTONE Colors to print differently.

dia size to **Letter.**

or Correction to **None**.

Print Quality to **Standard**.

sing to **Cold**.

media:
ge Rotation to **90** degrees to save paper.
Media to **After each job** to print the pages in a continuous

vance Media to **Never** to save paper.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

not using a supported driver:

document with the following front panel selections or
able utility files. Any other selections will cause the PANTONE
rint differently.

dia size to **Letter** (in a driver).

or Correction to **None** (front panel or utility file).

Print Quality to **Standard** (front panel or utility file).

sing to **Cold** (front panel or utility file).

media, set **Page Rotation** to **90** degrees (utility file only).

media, set **Media Cutting: per Job** to print the pages in a
ous banner (front panel or utility file).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Acrobat (PC)

e *PANT600.PDF* file in Adobe's Acrobat Reader application, and
ges you want.

ng the PC files if you haven't already installed the files.

already have a copy of Acrobat Reader, install the application
inter's CD-ROM; see Installing the PC files.

bat Reader is installed, locate the *PANT600.PDF* file in the
directory on either the printer's CD-ROM or the Printer Software for
iskette. Double-click the file to launch Acrobat Reader and open

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rint pages from the color sampler chart file as desired. You can
eed Letter-size media or use roll media.

**printing from a supported driver (such as Adobe PS3 for
3.1 or the Windows 95 PostScript driver):**

document with the following selections. Any other selections in
will cause the PANTONE Colors to print differently.

dia size to **Letter.**

or Correction to **None**.

Print Quality to **Standard**.

sing to **Cold**.

media:
ge Rotation to **90** degrees to save paper.
Media to **After each job** to print the pages in a continuous

vance Media to **Never** to save paper.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

not using a supported driver:

document with the following front panel selections or
able utility files. Any other selections will cause the PANTONE
rint differently.

dia size to **Letter** (in a driver).

or Correction to **None** (front panel or utility file).

Print Quality to **Standard** (front panel or utility file).

sing to **Cold** (front panel or utility file).

media, set **Media Cutting: per Job** to print the pages in a
ous banner (front panel or utility file).

ge Rotation to **90** degrees (utility file only).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

entire chart

ad the *PANTONE® Phaser 600.ps* (*PANT600.PS*) file to the printer.
ript file that contains the necessary color correction, print quality,
nformation. Make sure you print the chart on paper for best results.
Letter-size pages; you can manually feed Letter-size paper to print
roll media.

entire chart (Macintosh)

entire chart (PC)

verview to return to the main topics list.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

entire chart (Macintosh)

ing QuickDraw GX, you can print the PANTONE Color sampler chart from
Phaser 600 GX printer driver; see Downloading printer utilities for

ng the Macintosh files if you haven't already installed the files.

files in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

chart, do the following:

the *LaserWriter Utility* in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard
nd double-click its icon to start the application.

Download PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

he *PANTONE® Phaser 600.ps* file, and click **Open**.
e was installed in the *Pantone Files* folder, inside the
Tools folder.)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

prompt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file
or saving printer output. Use the default name given in the edit
type in a new name. Then click **Save** to send the file to the

tput is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a
box; click **OK** to continue.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

entire chart (PC)

ng the PC files if you haven't already installed the files.

ANTONE Color chart using one of the following methods:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pantone Colors from an application

ntone Colors from a Macintosh application

NTONE Colors from a PC/Windows application

verview to return to the main topics list.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ntone Colors from a Macintosh application

TONE Colors within an application using the colors on the chart.

locument using one of the following methods:

printing from a supported driver (such as Adobe PSPrinter 600 GX):

document with the following selections. Any other selections in will cause the PANTONE Colors to print differently.

or Correction to **None**.

Print Quality to **Standard**.

sing to **Cold**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

not using a supported driver:

document with the following front panel selections or
able utility files. Any other selections will cause the PANTONE
rint differently.

or Correction to **None**.

Print Quality to **Standard**.

sing to **Cold**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NTONE Colors from a
vs application

TONE Colors within an application using the colors on the chart.

document using one of the following methods:

printing from a supported driver (such as Adobe PS3 for 3.1 or the Windows 95 PostScript driver):

document with the following selections. Any other selections in will cause the PANTONE Colors to print differently.

or Correction to **None**.

Print Quality to **Standard**.

sing to **Cold**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

not using a supported driver:

document with the following front panel selections or
able utility files. Any other selections will cause the PANTONE
rint differently.

or Correction to **None** (front panel or utility file).

Print Quality to **Standard** (front panel or utility file).

sing to **Cold** (front panel or utility file).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USING THE ASERPRINT™ PLUG-IN FOR PHOTOSHOP

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

™ plug-in operates within the Photoshop application to improve the
sfer time from your computer to your printer. The Phaser 600
M and the printer software diskette contain the PhaserPrint plug-in
Photoshop, and Phaser 600 printers, and other supported Tektronix

ware produces correct output only on supported printers. If you use
a printer not listed in the PhaserPrint dialog box, the image may be
tly on the page, or colors may look incorrect, or your file may

owing topics for more information:

ty

he PhaserPrint plug-in for Photoshop

plug-in

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ility

ware is compatible with the following computers:

2.5.1 and higher

and higher

rPrint plug-in also works under QuickDraw GX if your default
inter refers to a printer supported by the PhaserPrint software.

3.0 and higher

5, Windows NT, or Windows 3.1 (with Win 32s installed)

TCP/IP support requires proper installation of IP networking
nd cards

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the PhaserPrint plug-in for Photoshop

owing topics for more information:

ne plug-in for Macintosh

ne plug-in for Windows

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e plug-in for Macintosh

osh software to install the printer's software.

e printer's CD-ROM, or Printer Software Installer for Macintosh
, select **Easy Install** to automatically install the printer's
e.

e printer's CD-ROM, select the **PhaserPrint Photoshop Plug-in**
Custom Install window.

is automatically installed in the *Acquire/Export* folder, inside the
der, in the Photoshop application folder, on your computer's hard

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e plug-in for Windows

application on the printer's CD-ROM to install the PhaserPrint

rinter's CD-ROM into your computer's CD-ROM drive.

he following depending on the version of Windows you are using:

nd Windows NT 4.0

icon in the taskbar on your
menu that appears, click

dow, type in the CD-ROM
and the PHOTOSHP
wed by the file name

\SETUP.EXE

Windows 3.1 and Windows NT 3.51

1. In the **Program Manager**, select **Run** from the **File** menu.
2. At the **Command Line**, type in the CD-ROM drive location and the *PHOTOSHP* directory, followed by the file name *SETUP.EXE*.
   For example:

   D:\PHOTOSHP\SETUP.EXE
3. Click **OK**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

status dialog box appears, followed by the Installer's introductory
ck **Next** to continue.

onix PhaserPrint Setup information dialog box, click **Next** to
les.

status dialog box appears while files are copied to your computer.

p is complete, an **Information** dialog box appears. Click **OK** to
stallation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e plug-in

owing topics for more information:

e PhaserPrint plug-in

ptions in the PhaserPrint dialog box

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e PhaserPrint plug-in

already have a Phaser 600 printer selected as the default printer, wing:

osh: Open the **Chooser** and select a PostScript driver (such as obe PSPrinter) and your Phaser 600 printer, or select an riate QuickDraw GX desktop printer. The PhaserPrint software ke a printer driver, and prints to the printer you selected in the **er**.

ws: Select your printer and port within the PhaserPrint software cribed later in these instructions.

oshop and an image.

ile menu, highlight **Export** to see the pop-up menu. Select **nt** from the list; the **PhaserPrint** dialog box appears.

ter field, select **Phaser 600**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

t software supports the following image modes selected from
's **Mode** menu. If you select a mode not listed here, an error
appears and your image is not printed.

ale

d Color

olor

Color

lor

n Photoshop 2.5.1, if you select an image mode not supported
serPrint software, the following inaccurate error
appears:

**not complete the "PhaserPrint..." command because the
module does not work with Bitmap images.**

nessage does not list the specific unsupported color mode you

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ptions in the PhaserPrint dialog box

owing topics for more information:

s
ntosh)
lows)

e data

- Mirror print
- Center page
- No margins
- Image smoothing
- Color control strip
- Stylized representation of the page
- Scaling an image
- Landscape orientation
- Center images
- Replicate images
- Image size
- Image separation
- Number of images
- Image layout
- Media size
- Show color preview of image

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

opies

er of copies to print, from 1 to 1000.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Macintosh)

pop-up menu allows you to choose between printing an image or
e to disk.

: This option prints the image to the printer currently selected in
er. When you select this option, The **Printer model** field
e name of the printer currently selected in the **Chooser**. If the
rinter is not a PostScript printer, this option is unavailable
t).

t file: This option lets you save an image to disk as a PostScript
. When you click the **Save** button, another dialog box appears
ou to choose a new or existing file for saving the PostScript
, when you select this option, the **File format** pop-up menu
available. This pop-up menu has two options: *ASCII base-85*
.

base-85. This option encodes image data using an ASCII-85
ring file output, making the resulting PostScript file portable so it
downloaded through interface ports that don't support
data. Note that the file may be up to 25% larger.

This option outputs image data in binary format.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windows)

pop-up menu allows you to choose between printing an image or
e to disk. It has from two to four options, depending on your system

is available if a TCP/IP stack is installed and running. After you
option, you can choose a printer from the **Printer model** pop-up
u can add printers to the list, delete printers from the list, as well
rinter's configuration.

fastest printing method and almost always prints your jobs in
time than the Parallel Port or Printer Driver methods. This is the
ded method if it is available for the printer you are using.

ort

is available if you have any parallel printers installed in your
you select this option, you can choose the desired printer port
ort Name pop-up menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

iver

n prints the image to the selected printer. After you select this u can choose a printer from the **Driver name** pop-up menu. print from the main Photoshop window, the PhaserPrint plug-in mage on this printer.

t file

n lets you save an image to disk as a PostScript Level 2 file. click the **Save** button, another dialog box appears allowing you a new or existing file for saving the PostScript code.

select this option, the **File format** pop-up menu becomes This pop-up menu has two options: *ASCII base-85* and *Binary.*

base-85. If you choose this option, the image data is encoded n ASCII-85 filter during file output, making the resulting ript file portable so it can be downloaded through interface ports n't support binary data. Note that the file may be up to 25%

If this you choose this option, image data is output in binary

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

l

r model pop-up menu lists the printers supported by the
t software.

r printer model (**Phaser 600**) so that PhaserPrint can display the
tions for that printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

aper size from this pop-up menu. See Page size, print area, and
a list of media sizes.

s are printer-specific. Select your printer in the **Printer model**
e selecting a paper size.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ion

n the options in the pop-up menu.

e selected **Mode** in Photoshop, then the Color Corrections are ble.

he selected **Mode** in Photoshop, then the **Calibrated RGB** lso available.

GB and Lab modes take longer to print than other modes because the convert CIE colors to RGB or CMYK colors for printing.

corrections — making the best selection for details on the following ctions:

- SWOP Press
- Euroscale Press
- Commercial Press
- Monochrome
- Use Printer Setting
- Calibrated RGB*

or
Display
ess

e images are printed using the Calibrated RGB color space as determined p's Monitor Setup in order to match the currently selected monitor's colors r's colors. This option is unavailable if the image is not RGB.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

n the options in the pop-up menu.

uality modes for details on the following print quality modes:

rd

ced

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

n the options in the pop-up menu.

g options work on any media type. The default setting is Cold.

Prints may look lighter, with more white paper visible around the dots. The inks may be less durable if they are not fused.

Flattens the dots, adding dot gain, and making colors look Cold fusing also makes printed colors more resistant to flaking. ode is optimized for use with the TekColor Color Correction .

oftens the wax and flattens the printed dots. On roll media, Hot es the Advance Media setting, and always adds 8.875 inches of aper after each page printed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

dia

n the options in the pop-up menu.

nce Media feature is for use on roll media only. The amount the dvanced is measured in points; the default is 72 points (one s option is not available if Hot Fusing is selected.

Prints one page after another without adding extra space n the pages.

ach Job: Advances the media a specified distance only after page of a job is printed.

ach Page: Advances the media a specified distance after each rinted.

the distance or amount the media is advanced, use the utility file shipped on the printer's CD-ROM or diskettes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

n the options in the pop-up menu.

e is for use with roll media only.

No cut is made after prints are finished.

ach Job: The media is cut only after an entire job is printed.

ach Page: The media is cut after each page is printed. This is ault mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

n

n the options in the pop-up menu.

n rotates the page, or image, on the media by the amount

rees: Rotates the image left, or counter-clockwise,
legrees.

grees: Rotates the image left, or counter-clockwise,
degrees. The image is turned up-side down.

grees: Rotates the image left, or counter-clockwise,
degrees.

The image is not rotated. This is the default selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tent

n is available in the following cases:

ode in Photoshop is **RGB**, and you select **Calibrated RGB** as **or Correction** in PhaserPrint.

ode in Photoshop is **Lab**.

n the options in the pop-up menu. See Using the color rendering details on the following rendering intents:

te Colorimetric

e Colorimetric

tion

tual

inter Setting (Uses the printer's default setting.)

GB and Lab modes take longer to print than other modes because the convert CIE colors to RGB or CMYK colors for printing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nage data

box either **on** or **off**.

ption to compress image data so less data needs to be sent to

n is useful if your network connection is slow, for example, if you cted to a very busy network or if you are using LocalTalk or a rt. **For fast networks, printing may be faster without using n.**

t for this option is **on**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

box either **on** or **off**.

produces a quick print of your image with slightly reduced lity.

reflects the color correction you selected for printing your

test printing, use the **None** color correction option.

t for this option is **off**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

box either **on** or **off**.

box on when you are using manually fed media.

uses the current settings for Media size, Landscape
, and Quality.

t is **off**.

must be reselected each time you want to print on manually

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

box either **on** or **off**.

Preview option is available only with the printer's Extended

n lets you print a small "thumbnail" version of the first page of ob.

is reduced by one-fifth in both height and width, or to B-size ches), whichever is smaller.

ew option saves on the amount of media and the print time that mally be required for printing the same image at full size.

n is best suited for roll media, but can also be used with media.

ble area is indicated around the reduced image with dashed , showing page, or image, placement.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

preview image is printed, the front panel displays the **Print** message, with a choice of three buttons. There is a default 15 minutes while the printer waits for you to press one of the the time runs out before a button is pressed, the job is and the printer is returned to the ready state.

g **Cancel** ends the Print Preview, returning the printer to the tate.

g **Pause** enters a Pause menu, allowing you to print the reduced at a different scale.

g **Print** prints the full size image and any subsequent pages of t job.

t for this option is **off**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

box either **on** or **off**.

inverts an image left-to-right before printing.

t selection is **off**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

box either **on** or **off**:

media, the page, or image, is centered on the media from
-side.

-sheet media, the image is centered from side-to-side and from
ottom.

e default setting in the printer, either None or a setting made
ostScript utility file shipped on the printer's CD-ROM.

t for this option is **off**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

box either **on** or **off**.

box on to specify zero margins for the current page size.

tion with roll media.

t is **off**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

hing

box either **on** or **off**.

Smoothing option produces smooth color detail when printing
images.

is useful when bitmapped images are enlarged to print on large

improves some low resolution images by averaging between

t for this option is **off**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

strip

option either **on** or **off** to print a band of colors along the bottom
ur prints. The default is **off**.

ors are the printer's 8 primary and secondary colors: cyan,
a, yellow, black, red (magenta and yellow), green (cyan and
blue (cyan and magenta), and black (cyan, magenta, and

ors are printed at 100 percent saturation or brightness, and also
ercent.

ors reflect the current color correction or PhaserMatch custom
selected in the driver.

d band also includes information about the file, such as File (file
lor Profile (color correction or PhaserMatch custom profile), and
me of printing.

tion to check the consistency of printed colors between prints
he same printer, or between prints made on more than one of the
or model of printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

esentation of the page

n the lower left of the dialog box is a stylized representation of
s it would look when printed using the current selections in the
t, **Printer model**, **Media size**, **Landscape orientation**,
images, **Center images**, and **Image separation** options. When
e any of these selections, the representation of the page is
reflect the new selection.

olor preview of image is on, an approximate color image is

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nage

t

is check box to scale the image to the largest size that will fit the area of the currently selected page size or orientation.

tion automatically updates the value in the **Scale** field.

the percentage the image should be scaled, from 10 percent to ercent.

s option with the **Replicate images** option to produce multiple of an image on a single page.

sage

ng message appears in the dialog box whenever a scaled not fit within the image area of the currently selected page size on option:

Image clipping will occur.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rientation

box to print the image horizontally (landscape) on the page.
box unchecked to print the image vertically (portrait) on the

e stylized representation of the page, in the lower left corner of
box, to see how your selection will look when printed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

es

box to center the image in the image area of the page.

s not checked, the lower left corner of the image is aligned with
eft corner of the printable area of the page.

er images box is checked *and* the **Replicate images** box is
he set of replicated images are centered in the image area of

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ages

box to fill the image area of the page with as many copies of the
will fit.

each replicated image is determined by the setting in the **Scale**

of each replicated image (shown as black rectangles in the
presentation of the page) is too small to display, the total image
printed page is shown as a single gray rectangle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

eflects the dimensions, in inches or millimeters, of the image.

e in the **Scale** box is out-of-range, the image dimensions are
with question marks.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ation

n is only available if the **Replicate images** box is checked.

amount, in inches or millimeters, to specify the amount of
between each replicated image.

mount reduces the number of images that can be printed at

um allowed separation value is **0** inches.

num separation value is **4** inches (or **100** mm).

t separation value is **0.125** (one-eighth) inches (or **3.175** mm).

acters for this field are **0** to **9** and a period (or decimal point).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e in a value, the stylized representation of the page, and the **f images** and **Image layout** values, are dynamically updated. If ntered in the **Image separation** field is out-of-range, the values her fields are replaced by question marks, and no images are he stylized representation of the page. If the value is ge, and you click the **Print** or **Save** button, the following alert is

The value for Image separation is out of range. It will be replaced with the closest allowed value.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nages

lisplays the number of scaled images that will fit in the image
currently selected **Media size** and **Landscape orientation**

er of images reflects the current **Image separation** value.

icate images box is not checked, this number is set to **1**.

the **Scale** or **Image separation** values are out-of-range, a
ark is displayed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

hows how the scaled images will fit horizontally and vertically in
area of the currently selected **Media** and **Landscape**
n options.

layout reflects the current **Image separation** value.

icate images box is not checked, this number is set to **1 x 1**.

the **Scale** or **Image separation** values are out-of-range,
narks are displayed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

eflects the dimensions, in inches or millimeters, of the selected
.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

review of image

displays an approximate color image, rather than a black box, **ized representation of the page** field.

is set to **off** each time you start the PhaserPrint plug-in.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USING THE PHASER 600 GX DRIVER

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Apple Macintosh QuickDraw GX, use the Phaser 600 GX driver to
aser 600 printer.

r 600 GX driver works with QuickDraw GX and
Draw GX applications.

y GX does not work with non-QuickDraw GX printer drivers. If
o print from non-QuickDraw GX applications with a driver such
erWriter 8.x, you must first disable QuickDraw GX; see Disabling
GX for instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

owing topics for more information:

quirements

e Phaser 600 GX printer driver

desktop printer

unique desktop printers

h a desktop printer

a shared printer

m QuickDraw GX applications

m non-QuickDraw GX applications

nter status

QuickDraw GX

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

equirements

ve an optional PhaserShare card installed in the printer before using the tware.

aser 600 GX printer driver requires the following hardware and

Macintosh II computer, or later

Mbytes of RAM

GX

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the Phaser 600 GX printer driver

application on the printer's CD-ROM to install the *Phaser 600 GX*
ee Macintosh software for instructions. Then, go on to Creating a
or instructions on creating a desktop printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a desktop printer

equires you to create desktop printers for printing. Depending on cation you are using, printing is as easy as dragging a document printer icon.

o rename the printer listed in the **Chooser**, do so before creating any ters. If you rename the printer in the **Chooser**, any desktop printers hat printer will not work, and must be removed to the Trash and See Changing the printer's name from a Macintosh for instructions on using ter Utility to rename the printer.

oser from the **Apple** menu.

haser 600 GX printer driver icon on the left side of the **Chooser**. ars with the printers available on your network. (If the printer driver not appear, **Restart** your Macintosh, and repeat the printer driver procedure; also, check the cable connections on your computer)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nect via field's pop-up menu, select your printer's communication

pleTalk option is the standard network connection.

rvers option is used to select a shared desktop printer; see
up a shared printer for details.

ur Phaser 600 printer in the list of printers on the right side of the

reate button to create a desktop printer. An icon of the printer
the desktop with the same name as the printer selected in the

Chooser by clicking its close box.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

p unique desktop printers

more than one desktop printer of the same physical printer. Each can be set up with different print modes or options and given a e. This feature makes it easy to print to a specific printer with the t already selected. In the illustration below, a desktop printer has a Phaser 600 printer with the **Vivid Color** color correction and the pe selections.

esktop printer; see Creating a desktop printer for instructions.

hlight) a desktop printer icon. The **Printing** menu appears in the t the top of the Macintosh screen.

inter Driver Defaults command in the **Printing** menu to select desktop printers; see Selecting printing options for details.

the desktop printer, highlight the icon on the desktop and type a Renaming a desktop printer has no effect on the printer's name in **er**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

with a desktop printer

g QuickDraw GX applications, do *one* of the following:

desktop printer in the **Print** dialog box.

cument onto a desktop printer icon. The application
ding to the document opens, prints the document, and

g non-QuickDraw GX applications, do *one* of the following:

default desktop printer with the **Print** command from the

cument onto a desktop printer icon. The application
ding to the document opens, displays the **Print** dialog box,
or you to click **Print**. After printing the document, the
n quits.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printing menu

mands in the **Printing** menu are standard QuickDraw GX driver
are documented by Apple (see the *Macintosh Guide* on-line
tails). The last group of commands in this menu are

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng

rint Queue and **Stop Print Queue** commands in the **Printing** menu
nt queues on individual desktop printers.

nlight) a desktop printer icon.

rinting menu, select either **Start Print Queue** or **Stop Print**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a default desktop printer

nlight) a desktop printer icon.

rinting menu, select **Set Default Printer**.
ark appears next to the command, and a bold outline appears
desktop printer's icon.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

g extensions

on Setup command in the **Printing** menu to specify which
ng extensions you want enabled for the currently selected desktop
ult, all printing extensions are enabled.

nlight) a desktop printer icon.

ension Setup from the **Printing** menu.

ctions as desired.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nting options

Driver Defaults command in the **Printing** menu to set default elected desktop printer. This dialog box includes such options as tions and print quality modes.

defaults dialog box is also available through the **Print** command in the r QuickDraw GX applications.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ults	Options		
	■ None ■ Vivid Color ■ Simulate Display	■ SWOP Press ■ Euroscale Press ■ Commercial Press	■ SNAP Press ■ Monochrome ■ Use Printer Setting
	■ Standard	■ Enhanced	
	■ None	■ Cold	■ Hot
	■ Never	■ After Each Job	■ After Each Page
	■ Never	■ After Each Job	■ After Each Page
	■ None ■ 90 Degrees	■ 180 Degrees	■ 270 Degrees
g	■ On	■ Off	
ip	■ On	■ Off	
	■ On	■ Off	
	■ On	■ Off	
	■ On	■ Off	
eed	Check box **on** to see a dialog box confirming each page you want to print with manual feed. If you check this box **on**, then go to the **Print** dialog box to select **Use Manual Feed**.		

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

printer utilities

Utilities command in the **Printing** menu to download printer utility
ted desktop printer. This command cannot be used on a shared
y the Macintosh hosting the shared printer.

nlight) a desktop printer icon.

ter Utilities from the **Printing** menu.

y pop-up menu, select the utility you want downloaded to the
n click **OK**. See Printer utilities for a list of utilities available in this

an alert message, click **OK** or **Cancel** as desired.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

es

lities can be downloaded to the printer with the **Printer Utilities** the **Printing** menu.

up Page

guration Page

K Sampler

Sampler

Sampler

Sampler

ONE Sampler

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

stScript files

ostScript File command in the **Printing** menu to download
o the selected desktop printer. For example, use this command to
ility files included on the CD-ROM and diskettes shipped with the
mmand cannot be used on a shared printer, except by the Macintosh
ed printer.

nlight) a desktop printer icon.

d PostScript File from the **Printing** menu.

PostScript file you want to download.

to send the file to the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

p a shared printer

desktop printer in the same way you share files, folders, or
e **Sharing** command in the **File** menu. Both the host and client
have a copy of the same printer driver.

esktop printer; see Creating a desktop printer for instructions.

he desktop printer icon you want to share.

ring from the **File** menu.

heck box to turn on **Share this printer**.

ose box.

message, click **Save**.

p printer's icon changes to reflect the change in status to a shared

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ared printer

e a printer hosted by another user's computer, do the following:

Chooser from the **Apple** menu.

haser 600 GX printer driver icon on the left side of the **Chooser**.

nect via field's pop-up menu, select **Servers.**

printers in the **Chooser** changes to show only shared printers.
e shared printer you want to use.

Chooser.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rom QuickDraw GX applications

g dialog boxes if you are using QuickDraw GX applications with the driver.

Page Setup dialog box

Print dialog box

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ge Setup dialog box

up from the **File** menu, then click the **More Choices** button to see
alog box.

ons: The scrollable icon list on the left side of the dialog box
printing extensions that are available to the printer driver. When
he **General** icon displays the normal **Page Setup** options.
ther icon to see a new set of options.

pple's QuickDraw GX documentation for instructions on installing
tensions; refer to Using printing extensions to use the **Extensions**
mand in the **Printing** menu to enable installed printing
.

e: This is a list of page sizes available for the selected printer.
age size, print area, and margins for details on page size.

n and **Scale:** These are standard driver options described in
cumentation.

r: This pop-up menu allows you to select a different desktop
formatting your document.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nt dialog box

n the **File** menu, then click the **More Choices** button to see the g box.

ons: The scrollable icon list on the left side of the dialog box printing extensions that are available to the printer driver. When he **General** icon displays the normal **Print** options. Select on to see a new set of options. **Print Time** and **Paper Match** are QuickDraw GX software and are always available.

the options in this dialog box are standard driver options in Apple's documentation.

d: Manual

ing on manually fed media, you need to select **Manual** in this , *and* select the appropriate **Manual Feed Media** option in the printing extension; see Using the TekColor printing extension for

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

kColor printing extension

g box, select the **TekColor** icon in the scrollable list at the left of the
e printer options.

box is similar to the one that appears when you select **Printer Driver**
m the **Printing** menu; refer to Selecting printing options for details.

ngs in this dialog box reflect the defaults for the selected desktop
st applications, you can change the printing options and save those
h document.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rom non-QuickDraw GX applications

non-QuickDraw GX applications with the Phaser 600 GX driver, the
Print dialog boxes look similar to the standard LaserWriter driver.
dialog boxes have no printer-specific options, such as TekColor
s. These dialog boxes reflect the selections made in the default
You cannot change these printer settings from an application, but
them by selecting (highlighting) the default desktop printer and
r Driver Defaults command in the **Printing** menu.

ange the default desktop printer before you change printing
hange the default desktop printer, see Designating a default desktop

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

desktop printer's default selections

hlight the default desktop printer.

rinting menu, select **Printer Driver Defaults**.

ed printer selections, then click **OK** and return to your application.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

printer status

a print job to a desktop printer, you can monitor the status of the **Printer Status** dialog box.

ays to open the **Printer Status** dialog box:

hlight) the appropriate desktop printer icon, then select **Open le** menu.

ck the appropriate desktop printer icon.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

QuickDraw GX

disable QuickDraw GX when printing from some non-QuickDraw so you can use a driver such as the LaserWriter 8.x driver.

ays to disable QuickDraw GX:

Extensions folder inside the **System Folder**.

uickDraw™ GX extension onto the desktop.

tart from the **Special** menu.

nters created before you disabled QuickDraw GX will have an "**X**" heir icons. These desktop printers remain unavailable for use until s re-enabled.

lation, QuickDraw GX altered the Fonts folder inside your System Folder. e QuickDraw GX, you may need to reinstall some fonts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ensions Manager in the **Control Panel**.

able all QuickDraw GX entries, such as **QuickDraw GX** and
v Helper.

tart from the **Special** menu.

nters created before you disabled QuickDraw GX will have an "**X**"
heir icons. These desktop printers remain unavailable for use until
s re-enabled.

lation, QuickDraw GX altered the Fonts folder inside your System Folder.
e QuickDraw GX, you may need to reinstall some fonts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PRINTING FROM DOS

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

owing topics for more information:

ports

m DOS

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

p ports

owing topics for more information:

the parallel port

optional interface ports

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

he parallel port

the printer's parallel port, disable timeouts on your computer's
nake sure that large files will print, even if data transmission is slow.

ODE command to disable timeouts on your computer's parallel port.

llowing command at the DOS prompt (if LPT1 is not available, use

```
MODE LPT1:,,P
```

OS documentation for details on the **MODE** command.

d the **MODE** command to your *AUTOEXEC.BAT* file, so that it takes
y time you turn on your computer. (Refer to your PC user
tion.)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

optional interface ports

on setting up any of the optional PhaserShare interface ports, refer
are Network Cards and Software System Administrator Manual.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rom DOS

owing topics for more information:

corrections

ktronix driver

n-Tektronix driver

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

corrections

e TekColor color correction features are available only though printer
the Adobe PS3 driver or the Windows 95 PostScript driver. Select
s through the printer's front panel or with downloadable utility files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tronix driver

cations include printer drivers for Tektronix printers. Check the are using for a printer driver for a Phaser 600 printer. Install and use ding to the application's documentation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

n-Tektronix driver

n you are using does not have a driver for a Phaser 600 printer, do
ing:

ee if other Tektronix Phaser series printers are listed, and
e of those.

nix Phaser series printers are listed, you can use a generic color
printer driver. However, generic drivers do not have information
ter's page sizes and image areas, and images may be clipped
when printed. Using a standard Letter- or A4-size media
hould produce acceptable results.

e application's vendor, or call Tektronix Customer Support in the
anada at 1-800-835-6100, for printing information. Outside the
anada, contact your local Tektronix reseller.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printing from UNIX and VMS Workstations

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

int files from your workstation to a Phaser 600 printer as you would
t printer, for example, an Apple LaserWriter. Workstation users can
pplication that generates PostScript Level 1 or Level 2 output.

ation on printing from a workstation, request a document catalog
oHAL, the Tektronix automated fax systems. Refer to Using the
stems for instructions on using these systems.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

olor color corrections and other printer features, use one or more of thods:

t™ software for UNIX workstations functions like a printer driver ng printing options, and provides fast screen copy printing; see m UNIX workstations.

n software and EasyCopy/X for VMS workstations provides mmunication with the printer; see Printing from VMS workstations.

s on the printer's front panel let you select printing options; refer e Front Panel for instructions on using the front panel.

able utility files let you select printing options; see Using the utility st of topics.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rom UNIX workstations

nments, Tektronix offers the optional PhaserPrint for UNIX software. UNIX software offers driver-selectable printer options, and provides nd screen copy printing to Tektronix color printers.

UNIX software is available for these workstations:

Workstation	Operating System
Sun	SunOS 4.1.3 Solaris 2.3, 2.4
SGI	IRIX 4.0, 5.2, 5.3
HP 9000 700/800	HPUX 9.0.5
IBM RS/6000	AIX 3.2
DECstation	Ultrix 4.0, 4.4
DEC Alpha	OSF/1 3.0 and 3.2

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

UNIX software works with the workstation's native spooling system to files and raster files in these formats: Sun Raster Format (SRF), GB.

copy of PhaserPrint for UNIX software, along with an installation le on the printer's CD-ROM in the *UNIXDEMO* directory. If you rchase a licensed version of the PhaserPrint for UNIX software, aler, local Tektronix office, or in the United States, **100**, and order part number 4690F20.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rom VMS workstations

n VMS workstations, the optional PhaserSym™ utility functions as a
ng printing options, and as a queue manager. PhaserSym software
th DEC workstations running VAX/VMS version 5.0 and later.
ware communicates over the printer's optional TCP/IP Ethernet
required for proper communication with the printer.

syCopy/X software provides fast raster image printing to Tektronix

to purchase a copy of PhaserSym software, contact your dealer,
ffice, or in the United States, call **1-800-835-6100**, and order part
..

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e printer's software

r features you can use the downloadable utility files available on the ter's CD-ROM.

es to set up spool queues with printer features such as print quality ctions. The utility files can also perform such tasks as changing the esetting the printer, and using an error handler; refer to Using the tails.

re written in the PostScript Level 2 programming language, and in a nay have to edit the files to change the default parameters.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

g the PC utility files

al ways to access the utility files:

Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM.

ng files from the Tektronix World Wide Web site.

ng files from the Tektronix ftp server.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM

ns with newer operating systems can automatically mount a
t the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive; the icon
should be visible on the screen.

an icon for the CD-ROM on the screen, you must mount the
the proper mount command. Check with your system administrator,
or instructions on the proper command for your system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e utility files

printer's utility files to perform the following procedures. Download
printer as you would any PostScript files.

y modes

ctions

e Color Sampler Charts

ont sampler from a PC

stScript error handler

Tektronix halftone screens

e startup page

nd disabling the startup page

e configuration page

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

he printer's name

nd disabling front panel menus

he printer

nd disabling job pipelining

a printer's serial port

a SCSI hard disk

a formatted SCSI hard disk

nd disabling SysStart Job execution

tScript and HP-GL job and wait timeouts

he printer's language mode

he Advance Media default

e offset

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

de / Media Fusing

ion

oothing

olor rendering intents

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the PC/DOS diskette on a on

owing topics for more information:

ersions 4.0.x and 5

g Solaris 2.3

g SunOS 4.1.3

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ersions 4.0.x and 5

ed diskettes can be easily mounted in the SGI environment. For
n, print out the appropriate **man** pages on your system.

x uses the *msdosd* daemon to mount a floppy diskette.
ses the *mediad* daemon to mount all types of devices, including
Both operating system versions have the utilities *from_dos* and
rt files and add or remove Control-M characters.

ette, insert the diskette into the disk drive.

emon monitors a floppy diskette drive. When a diskette is inserted,
propriately if it is in MS-DOS format. To specify a floppy disk drive,
iate device special file in `/dev/rdsk`. High-density diskettes are
ng floppy devices with the *hi* suffix.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

mon monitors the removable media devices on a system. When a
ed, it is mounted if it makes sense for that media type and if there is
m on it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

g Solaris 2.3

ed diskettes can be mounted in two ways in the Solaris
her automatically or manually. For more information, print out the
n pages on your system.

owing topics for more information:

diskette mounting instructions

kette mounting instructions

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

skette mounting instructions

anager is running, the PC/DOS diskette will be mounted
hen the diskette is inserted in the disk drive.

ume manager is running, type the following command:

```
ps -ef | grep vold
```

he diskette's contents, do the following steps:

Windows.

File Manager.

PC/DOS diskette.

e **File** button in the **File Manager** window, then click on **Check for**

anager displays the files on the diskette. You can then copy the
r hard disk, or send the files to the printer using the **lp** print

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ette mounting instructions

nager is not running, you can manually mount the PC diskette. You
rivileges to use the **mount** command. Type the following

```
nt -F pcfs device-special directory-name
```

example: `mount -F pcfs /dev/diskette /floppy`

name */dev/diskette* - */pcfs pcfs -no-* is in your */etc/vfstab* directory,
g command to mount the diskette: `mount /pcfs`

py the files to your hard disk or extract the file *unix.tar*, as described
s from unix.tar.

kette, type: `eject`

ute the **eject** command from within the mount point (the directory to
ounted the diskette).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

g SunOS 4.1.3

oot privileges to use the **mount** command. Type the following

```
nt -r -t pcfs device-name mount-point
```

example: `mount -r -t pcfs /dev/fd0c /mnt`

py the files to your hard disk or extract the file *unix.tar*, as described
s from unix.tar.

kette, type: **eject**

ute the **eject** command from within the mount point (the directory to
ounted the diskette).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

iles from *unix.tar*

contains all the shell scripts and other files needed for network
UNIX environments. The file is in UNIX **tar** format.

owing topics for more information:

contents of unix.tar

he files

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ontents of *unix.tar*

and:

```
tar tvf directory-name/unix.tar
```

-name is the mount point or the directory that contains the file. For

```
tar tvf /mnt/unix.tar
```


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e files

d) to the directory on your workstation where you want the files to

ommand:

```
tar xvf /directory-name/unix.tar
```

ectory-name is the mount point or the directory that contains the
xample:

```
tar xvf /mnt/unix.tar
```


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USING PRINTER UTILITIES

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ing the printer's front panel or the options in a supported driver, the
es offer another method for changing the way the printer operates.
a selection can only be made with a utility file.

owing topics for more information:

e utility files

g files to the printer

he printer's name

ne printer

olor rendering intents

nd disabling job pipelining

he Advance Media default

e offset

ntrol-D characters to PC files

a printer's serial port

es

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the utility files

owing topics for more information:

ne Macintosh utility files from the printer's CD-ROM

ne PC utility files

ng files from the Tektronix World Wide Web site

ng files from the Tektronix ftp server

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e Macintosh utility files
nter's CD-ROM

haser 600 printer's CD-ROM into your computer's CD-ROM drive.

k the **Phaser 600 Installer** icon. Click **Continue** until the
ll window appears.

tom Install from the pull-down menu.

of the driver options and the **Printer Utilities** item from the list.
o install one of the driver to install the *LaserWriter Utility*.)

ll.

nstalled in a *Printer Utilities* folder, inside a *PhaserTools* folder
hard disk by the printer's installer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e PC utility files

re available on the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM and diskette.

nstructions in PC/Windows software to install the printer's software.
Printer Utilities item in the **Custom Install: Utilities** window.

files in the *PHSR600* subdirectory, inside the *PHSRTOOL* directory
your hard disk by the installer application.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng files from the Tektronix World Wide Web site

site on the World Wide Web (WWW). You can reach the site from a
t the following address:

http://www.tek.com/Color_Printers/

Color Printer home page, explore options such as customer support
new product information. New and updated information is always
o check the WWW site frequently.

the Tektronix World Wide Web server (WWW) to download files such
vers. Use a web browser such as Netscape or Mosaic and follow

web browser and enter the following address:

ftp://ftp.tek.com/Color_Printers/bbs

e appropriate platform (*macintosh, pcs, or unix*).

00 for Phaser 600 printer-specific files.

files you need; the system prompts you to select a location for
ng the files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng files from the Tektronix ftp server

cluded on the printer's CD-ROM let you set up the printer from UNIX
ations to select between print quality modes, color correction
r features. If you don't have the means to transfer these files from
ou can request files from the Tektronix anonymous ftp server.

ange electronic mail with other Internet sites, you can access the
ver. From this server you can retrieve driver and utility files and
rmation.

Tektronix ftp server and download utility files, follow these

llowing at the system prompt, and press the **Return** key:

```
ftp  ftp.tek.com
```

stem responds:

```
Name (ftp.tek.com:<login name>) :
```


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ymous and press the **Return** key.

stem responds:

```
Guest login ok, send your complete
e-mail address as password.
```

e-mail address and press the **Return** key.

ectories to your printer-specific directory:

```
cd  Color_Printers/UNIX/<Tektronix
printer>/utilities
```

d the utility files, type the following command:

```
mget  *
```

stem prompts you for each file in the directory, to which you
d **y** (yes) or **n** (no).

ftp session, type **quit** or **bye**; then press the **Return** key.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ding files to the printer

owing topics for more information:

ng files from a Macintosh

ng files from a PC

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng files from a Macintosh

ript utility files on the printer's CD-ROM can be downloaded to the *LaserWriter Utility*.

using QuickDraw GX, you can download printer utilities from the 600 GX printer driver.

owing topics for more information:

aserWriter Utility to download files

aserWriter Utility to perform other tasks

ng files from the Phaser 600 GX driver

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

serWriter Utility to download files

Utility is an Apple utility program you use on the Macintosh to send and fonts to the printer.

Utility version 7.7 is compatible with Apple System Software l later. It is also compatible with QuickDraw GX.

System Software 6.x, check with the Tektronix BBS for another *aserWriter Utility* in the *LW_UTIL.SEA* compressed archive file. Refer lp for instructions on using the on-line services.

riter Utility cannot be used if the printer is connected to a print server. stem administrator to temporarily remove the printer from the print server necessary files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng the Macintosh utility files from the printer's CD-ROM to install the
ftware.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk, and
k its icon to start the application.

wnload PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

ile you want sent to the printer, and click **Open**. (The printer's utility
nstalled in the *Printer Utilities* folder, inside the *PhaserTools* folder.)

npt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file name
printer output. Use the default name given in the edit box or type in
e. (Printer output includes status messages generated by the
orting such conditions as out of paper.)

to send the file to the printer.

t is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a dialog
OK in the box to continue.
returned by the printer, you won't see this dialog box; check your
or the file the utility created for the printer's output.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

serWriter Utility to perform other tasks

wnloading PostScript files and fonts, you can use the
ty to perform the following specialized tasks:

nd disabling the startup page

he printer's name

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

files from the Phaser 600 GX driver

QuickDraw GX, you can use the Phaser 600 GX driver to download
printer.

ostScript File command in the **Printing** menu to download
o the selected desktop printer. This command cannot be used on a
xcept by the Macintosh hosting the shared printer.

nlight) a desktop printer icon.

d PostScript File from the **Printing** menu.

PostScript file you want to download.

to send the file to the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng files from a PC

er's utility files, send or download them to the printer from the
s port your printer is connected to.

owing topics for more information:

ng files from Windows 3.1

ng files from Windows 95

ng files from DOS

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

files from Windows 3.1

Copy command in the Windows **File Manager** to download
o the printer.

ng the PC utility files to locate the printer's utility files.

utility file you want to send to the printer, for example *RESET.PS*.

ile menu, select **Copy**. The **Copy** dialog box appears with the
ou selected listed in the **From** field.

eld, type the port your printer is connected to. For example, type
parallel port connection, then click **OK**.

rm File Replace dialog box appears, click **Yes** to continue; the file
ded to the printer.

r is connected to an optional Novell or TCP/IP network, you should follow
ons provided with your network software.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

files from Windows 95

OPY command to send the desired file to the printer. To find the low this procedure:

in the taskbar on your screen.

u that appears select **Programs**.

DOS Prompt from the list.

e utility files to locate the printer's utility files.

ter is connected to the parallel (LPT) port, type the following (where ***x*** is 1, 2, or 3):

```
COPY RESET.PS LPTx:
```

ter is connected to the optional serial (COM) port, type the ommand (where ***x*** is 1, 2, or 3):

```
COPY RESET.PS COMx:
```

ter is connected to an optional Novell or TCP/IP network, you ow the instructions provided with your network software.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

files from DOS

DOS **COPY** command to download PostScript files to the printer.

e utility files to locate the printer's utility files.

OPY command to send the desired file to the printer. For example, ter you would send the *RESET.PS* file to the printer.

ter is connected to the parallel (LPT) port, type the following (where ***x*** is 1, 2, or 3):

```
COPY RESET.PS LPTx:
```

ter is connected to the optional serial (COM) port, type the ommand (where ***x*** is 1, 2, or 3):

```
COPY RESET.PS COMx:
```

ter is connected to an optional Novell or TCP/IP network, you ow the instructions provided with your network software.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

g the printer's name

ets you change the printer's name.

owing topics for more information:

he printer's name from a Macintosh

he printer's name from a PC

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

he printer's name from a Macintosh

me has the following characteristics:

on the startup and configuration pages.

AppleTalk to identify the printer.

the **Chooser**.

to 31 characters long, and may contain any printable
except **@** (at sign) and **:** (colon).

t printer name is **Phaser 600**. If more than one printer with the
e appears in the same zone, numbers are appended to the
he printers added later, for example Phaser 600-1 and
0-2. These numbered printers appear in the Chooser; the actual
e is not changed.

hange is persistent across printer power cycles.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ing QuickDraw GX, remove any desktop printer icons that refer to the old
e and make new desktop printers after changing the printer's name.

nstructions in Installing the Macintosh utility files from the printer's
o install the printer's software.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk, and
ck its icon to start the application.

ne Printer from the **Utilities** menu; the currently selected printer is
e dialog box.

ew name in the edit box.

ename button.

irmation dialog box, click **OK**.

Chooser to reselect the printer with its new name.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

he printer's name from a PC

the printer's AppleTalk name from a PC.

me has the following characteristics:

on the startup and configuration pages.

AppleTalk to identify the printer.

to 31 characters long, and may contain any printable
except **@** (at sign) and **:** (colon).

hange is persistent across printer power cycles.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng the utility files to locate the printer's utility files.

RNTNAME.PS file in a text editor.

to substitute a different printer name for
r Name) in the **/PrinterName** line.

ditors add a carriage return or line feed after the last Control-D character
are editing. If your computer is connected to the printer through the
or the optional serial port, the extra characters will start a new job and
mes out after a few minutes. To avoid this, copy the *CTRLD.PS* file to the
you send the *PRNTNAME.PS* file; see CTRLD.PS for more information on
PS file.

the following methods to send the file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

g the printer

er (*RESET.PS*) file resets the printer to its power-on conditions (*not* its onditions), without turning the printer's power switch off and on. onditions include any custom changes made to the printer that are nter's NVRAM, or changes that are persistent across printer power mple, if you used a downloadable utility file to change the printer's color correction, these are power-on conditions that are not altered printer. Resetting the printer erases changes that are not persistent ower cycles, such as the Tektronix error handler utility and custom

the printer as soon as all the jobs in its queue are finished. The unavailable while it initializes.

owing topics for more information:

he printer from a Macintosh

he printer from a PC

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

he printer from a Macintosh

he **Restart Printer** command in the LaserWriter Utility's **Utilities** menu.
rocedure to reset the printer using the LaserWriter Utility to download the
r utility file.

nstructions in Installing the Macintosh utility files from the printer's
o install the printer's software.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk, and
ck its icon to start the application.

ownload PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

Reset Printer file in the list then click **Open**. (This file was installed
er Utilities folder, inside the *PhaserTools* folder.)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

of resetting the printer takes a few minutes to complete. You will receive
n your screen indicating the connection has been interrupted during the
onnection is re-established after the reset, so you can ignore this
ick the **Continue** button.

npt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file name
printer output. Use either the default name given in the edit box or
ew name.

to send the file to the printer.

t is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a dialog
OK to continue.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ne printer from a PC

ng the utility files to locate the printer's utility files.

the following methods to send the *RESET.PS* file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e color rendering intents

ring intents are designed for use with images containing colors PostScript Level 2 international color standard, CIE XYZ, which was e Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage (International llumination).

s

ering intent provides a specific type of color matching.

Intent Absolute

Intent Relative

Intent Saturation

Intent Perceptual

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tent Absolute

n the most important consideration is *matching colors exactly to the en colors*. This absolute rendering reproduces all colors exactly: mage prints *exactly* as it appears on the computer screen; in other hite" appears to contain a color (such as blue or gray), that color is an the white of the paper.

lors cannot be printed accurately on the Phaser 450 or other color inter uses the closest printer colors available for screen colors. flat" areas appear on prints where slightly different colors appear on

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tent Relative

n the most important consideration is *matching colors exactly to the en colors*. This relative rendering does not print the white areas in , it uses the white of the paper.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tent Saturation

or business graphics where the saturation, or brightness, of the
st important consideration.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tent Perceptual

o improve the appearance of scanned images.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

owing topics for more information:

haserPrint plug-in for Photoshop

wnloadable utility file

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

aserPrint plug-in for Photoshop

Photoshop, you can use the PhaserPrint plug-in to select color
s. See Using the PhaserPrint™ Plug-in for Photoshop for instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

loadable utility file

g downloadable utility files to set the printer's default color rendering
es remain in the printer's memory only while the printer is turned on.
urned off or reset, the default returns to **Rendering Intent Relative**.

Downloading methods	Utility files
■ **All Macintosh users:** Use the *LaserWriter Utility* to download these files to the printer. See Downloading files from a Macintosh for instructions.	■ *Rendering Intent Absolute* ■ *Rendering Intent Perceptual* ■ *Rendering Intent Relative* ■ *Rendering Intent Saturation*
■ **QuickDraw GX users:** Use the Phaser 450 GX driver to download these files to the printer. See Downloading printer utilities for instructions.	
■ Use the DOS **COPY** command to download these files to the printer. See Downloading files from a PC for instructions.	■ *RENDABS.PS* ■ *RENDPER.PS* ■ *RENDREL.PS* ■ *RENDSAT.PS*
■ Use the Windows 3.1 File Manager to download these files to the printer.	
■ Use the appropriate commands for your workstation.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

and disabling job pipelining

ng utility files offer faster print job throughput for high volume
ments. When job pipelining is turned on, the printer begins
cond print job before completely finishing the current print job.
turned *on* by factory default for the parallel port and optional serial
ed *off* by factory default for all network ports.

e job pipelining, a mismatch can occur between the job currently printing
message displayed for a previous print job. The mismatch occurs when
ready closed (but not completely printed) develops a problem and
rror during a subsequent print job.

owing topics for more information:

able job pipelining from a Macintosh

able job pipelining from a PC

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

able job pipelining from a Macintosh

nstructions in Installing the Macintosh utility files from the printer's
o install the printer's software.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk, and
ck its icon to start the application.

ownload PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

of the job pipelining files in the list then click **Open**. (These files
ed in the *Printer Utilities* folder, inside the *PhaserTools* folder.)

e *Pipelining On* file to turn on print job pipelining.

e *Pipelining Off* file to turn off print job pipelining.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

npt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file name
printer output. Use either the default name given in the edit box or
ew name.

to send the file to the printer.

t is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a dialog
OK to continue.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

able job pipelining from a PC

ng the utility files to locate the printer's utility files.

of the following files:

e *PIPE_ON.PS* file to turn on print job pipelining.

e *PIPE_OFF.PS* file to turn off print job pipelining.

the following methods to send the desired file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send a file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

g the Advance Media default

media is advanced is measured in points; the default is 72 points
can use the *Advance Media* (*ADVMEDIA.PS*) file to change the
distance. The new default value remains in the printer's memory
rinter power cycles.

ormation on the Advance Media options, see Advance Media.

owing topics for instructions:

Advance Media from a Macintosh

Advance Media from a PC

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

dvance Media from a Macintosh

nstructions in Installing the Macintosh utility files from the printer's
o install the printer's software.

dvance Media utility file in a text editor as plain text, and locate the
ne:

```
/MyAdvanceDistance 72 def
```

2 with the distance you want, measured in points.

e, renaming the file if desired.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk, and
ck its icon to start the application.

ownload PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Advance Media utility file you just modified in the list then click
is file was installed in the *Printer Utilities* folder, inside the
s folder.)

npt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file name
printer output. Use either the default name given in the edit box or
ew name.

to send the file to the printer.

t is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a dialog
OK to continue.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

dvance Media from a PC

ng the utility files to locate the printer's utility files.

DVMEDIA.PS utility file in a text editor as plain text, and locate the
ne:

```
/MyAdvanceDistance 72 def
```

2 with the distance you want, measured in points.

e, renaming the file if desired.

f the following methods to send the file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send a file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

age offset

Page Offset XY (*OFFSETXY.PS*) file to change the default width (X) xes on roll media. The printer's default is 0 (zero). The new default the printer's memory even between printer power cycles.

ne Page Centering option overrides the Page Offset selection.

owing topics for instructions:

ge offset from a Macintosh

ge offset from a PC

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e offset from a Macintosh

nstructions in Installing the Macintosh utility files from the printer's
o install the printer's software.

Page Offset XY utility file in a text editor as plain text, and locate the
nes:

```
/MyXOffset 0 def
/MyYOffset 0 def
```

with the amount you want, where **X** is the wide axis of the paper,
e long axis of the paper.

e, renaming the file if desired.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk, and
ck its icon to start the application.

ownload PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Page Offset XY utility file you just modified in the list then click
is file was installed in the *Printer Utilities* folder, inside the
s folder.)

npt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file name
printer output. Use either the default name given in the edit box or
ew name.

to send the file to the printer.

t is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a dialog
OK to continue.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e offset from a PC

ng the utility files to locate the printer's utility files.

OFFSETXY.PS utility file in a text editor as plain text, and locate the
nes:

```
/MyXOffset 0 def
/MyYOffset 0 def
```

with the amount you want, where **X** is the wide axis of the paper,
e long axis of the paper.

e, renaming the file if desired.

f the following methods to send the file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send a file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ontrol-D characters to PC files

.BAT and *CTRLD.PS* files are included for users who want to write
cript files. See Installing the utility files to locate the printer's

uter is connected to the printer through the parallel port, or the optional
ou need to have Control-D characters in your utility files or in the files you
vever, if your computer is connected to a network such as NetWare or
should not add Control-D characters to a utility file.

ntrol-D character is required at the end of PostScript files sent to the
port or optional serial port; it signals "end-of-job." A Control-D
and follow most PostScript data files. *ADDCTRLD.BAT* and
you add two Control-D characters to your files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BAT

T is a batch file that adds a Control-D to the beginning and the end
s file if you are creating your own PostScript files.

LD.BAT, copy *ADDCTRLD.BAT* and *CTRLD.PS* to the same
r hard disk. Type the following command:

```
ADDCTRLD filename
```

s the name of the file that needs Control-D characters.

ains some PostScript comments plus the Control-D character. Copy
e beginning and/or end of your PostScript files before you send them
PostScript utility files on the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM already
characters at the beginning and end.) You can send *CTRLD.PS* to
elf to make sure the printer is in the "end-of-job" condition.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng a printer's serial port

as the optional serial port installed, you can configure the port using
PS file or by using front panel selections.

e *DEVPARAM.PS* file, you should be familiar with the PostScript
ns command. You should also know how to use PostScript dictionaries
e pairs.

the *DEVPARAM.PS* file and send it to the printer *before* using other
ange the printer's performance.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ample sets these parameters:

ol to *Xon/Xoff*

one

o *8*

o *2*

to *9600*

the changes are persistent across jobs and across printer power
ain in effect until you change them again.

```
(%Serial_NV%) <<
        /Password    () def
        /FlowControl/XonXoff def
        /Parity     /None def
        /DataBits   8 def
        /StopBits   2 def
        /Baud       9600 def
>> setdevparams
```


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng the utility files to locate the printer's utility files.

EVPARAM.PS file in a text editor and substitute the values you want
he current values. The possible values for each parameter are
Parameter values table; the values are case-sensitive and must be
actly as shown in the table.

e.

s port you are using should be configured to receive PostScript. If
uestions, see Using Different Printer Language Modes for more
.

the following methods to send the file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

alues

Allowed values	Type	Parameter key	Allowed values	Type
KonXoff (software) Dtr (hardware)	string	CheckParity	true false	boolean
Even Odd None Space	string	On	true false	boolean
	integer	Interpreter	PostScript	string
	integer	Protocol	Normal Raw Binary	string
00 00 200 2400 4800 9600 9200 8400	integer	Enabled	true false	boolean

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ities

printer utility files available on the printer's CD-ROM and diskettes cribed in this section. Refer to the following table for information on tures with their accompanying utility file names, then use the ownloading files to the printer to download the files you need.

tility files

scriptions	Macintosh utility file	PC utility file
– making the	■ Commercial Press ■ Euroscale Press ■ Monochrome ■ No Color Correction ■ Simulate Display ■ SNAP Press ■ SWOP Press ■ Vivid Color	■ COMRCIAL.PS ■ EUROSCAL.PS ■ MONOCHRM.PS ■ NOCORECT.PS ■ DISPLAY.PS ■ SNAPRESS.PS ■ SWOPRESS.PS ■ VIVDCOLR.PS
	■ Enhanced Quality ■ Standard Quality	■ ENHANCED.PS ■ STANDARD.PS

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tility files

scriptions	Macintosh utility file	PC utility file
	■ Image Smoothing Off ■ Image Smoothing On	■ SMOTHOFF.PS ■ SMOOTHON.PS
	■ Cut Media After Each Job ■ Cut Media After Each Page ■ Cut Media Never ■ Cut Media Now	■ CUTJOB.PS ■ CUTPAGE.PS ■ CUTNEVER.PS ■ CUTNOW.PS
ia Fusing	■ Fusing Cold ■ Fusing Hot ■ Fusing None	■ FUSECOLD.PS ■ FUSEHOT.PS ■ FUSENONE.PS
	■ Mirror Print Off ■ Mirror Print On	■ MIROROFF.PS ■ MIRRORON.PS
	■ Page Rotation None ■ Page Rotation 90 ■ Page Rotation 180 ■ Page Rotation 270	■ ROTATENO.PS ■ ROTATE90.PS ■ ROTAT180.PS ■ ROTAT270.PS

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng utility files are described in other locations:

stScript error handler

e startup page

e configuration page

a SCSI hard disk

a formatted SCSI hard disk

nd disabling front panel menus

nd disabling SysStart Job execution

ektronix halftone screens

he printer's language mode

al status reporting

le color conversions

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USING SCSI HARD DISKS

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SCSI (Small Computer System Interface) hard disk to your printer to
nts.

owing topics for more information:

heral devices

SCSI hard disk

formation

a SCSI hard disk

a SCSI hard disk

a formatted SCSI hard disk

nd disabling SysStart Job execution

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ipheral devices

used for connecting these optional peripheral devices:

pystation

he Phaser Copystation and to connect it to your printer, refer to
of the *Phaser Copystation User Manual*. Refer to Phaser
n for ordering information.

CSI hard disk

e for additional downloadable fonts. You can connect one or
CSI external hard disks to the printer for additional font storage.
ou download a font to an external disk, the font remains there
u remove it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a SCSI hard disk

al information on SCSI hard disks, request a document catalog from HAL
the Tektronix automated fax systems. Refer to Using the automated fax
nstructions on using HAL.

age

printer can use most SCSI hard disks that support the full SCSI
Also, most SCSI hard disks that work with an Apple LaserWriter will
ser 600 printer. Contact your computer or printer dealer for

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

information

isk for information on ordering a SCSI hard disk, cables, and

erface cables and adapters for information on ordering SCSI cables.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng a SCSI hard disk

t one or more SCSI external hard disks to the printer for additional
hen you download a font to an external disk, the font remains there
it.

owing topics for more information:

ems

uidelines

one disk

multiple disks

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ems

xternal disk, you need the following items:

ripheral cable for each disk.
uses a SCSI-2, 50-pin connector. See Ordering Interface cables
rs if you need a 50-pin connector.

cable terminator, unless one of your disks has an internal

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

uidelines

g a hard disk to the printer, follow these guidelines:

r can support up to six external disks, **or** four disks and one
n.

urn **on** the disk(s) *before* you turn on the printer. Wait at least
e after turning on the disk(s) before turning on the printer.

rs:

nter must always be at one end of the chain with a terminator at
er end (or a terminated device such as the Phaser Copystation).

nter has an internal terminator.

umbers:

ultiple disks, each disk must have a unique SCSI ID number. Do
n on the printer or disk *until each disk has a unique number.*

nter's SCSI number is **7**, and the internal disk is number **4**.
D numbers for the external disk are **0**, **1**, **2**, **3**, **5** and **6**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

opystation:

ave a Phaser Copystation connected to the printer, it must be
at one end of the SCSI chain, with the printer at the other end
external disk(s) in the middle.

pystation uses two SCSI ID addresses, **5** and **6**; therefore, the
l disk(s) can use ID numbers **0** through **3**. If you set an external
SCSI ID address **5** or **6,** you may see an error on the
ration or startup pages.

file:

y load a startup file called *Sys/Start* onto your external disk. The
rt job file is similar to an init file. When you turn on the printer
executes, providing that *Sys/Start* has been enabled through a
file downloaded to the printer. Refer to Enabling and disabling
t Job execution for more information.

art file contains an error, the printer ignores the remainder of the file and
t up as expected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

d initialize:

the disk is already formatted for operation with a PostScript
you have to format and initialize the disk after connecting it to
ter.

o Formatting a SCSI hard disk and Initializing a formatted SCSI
sk after connecting a hard disk.

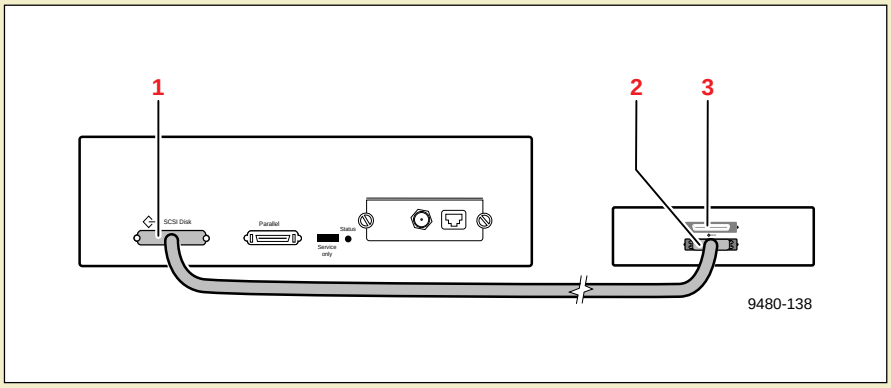
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

one disk

maging components, turn off the printer, any external disks, and a
if you have one, before you connect or disconnect a SCSI cable.
disk, and CopyStation if you have one connected, before you turn
r.

sk SCSI

(not
the disk
in
or if you
ser
n connected at the other end of the chain).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

multiple disks

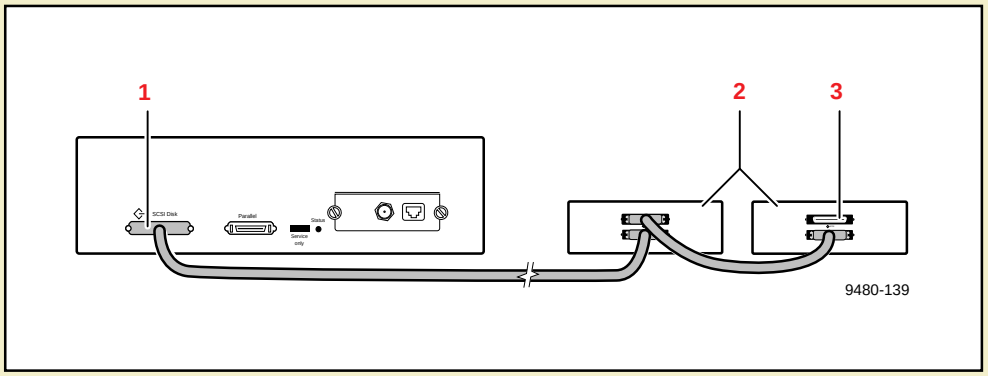
maging components, turn off the printer and external disk before you
isconnect a SCSI cable. Turn on the disks before you turn on the printer.

support up to six external disks. When you have more than one disk
e printer, follow these guidelines.

must have a unique SCSI ID number. Do not turn on the printer
il each disk has a unique number.

must always be at one end of the chain with a terminator at the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



sks

(not
the
as a

f you
ser

n connected at the other end of the chain). The middle disk must
n internal terminator).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng a SCSI hard disk

g procedure erases all data from all SCSI hard disks connected to the
onnect from the printer any hard disk you do not want reformatted, for
disk containing fonts.

formats and initializes all SCSI hard disks connected to the printer
usable with the PostScript Level 2 Phaser 600 printer. The
ess *erases all information already on the disk*; be sure you want the
efore you use this procedure. If you have a disk containing
want to keep, such as fonts, turn off all devices, then disconnect the
nter before using this file to format other disks.

ure to format and initialize a SCSI hard disk.

disks are formatted at the factory and do not require this formatting
check the documentation that came with your hard disk to see if the disk
tting. If your disk is already formatted, go on to Initializing a formatted
sk.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

art the formatting procedure, there is no way to cancel the formatting

owing topics for more information:

users

rkstation users

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

sers

acintosh software for instructions on installing the printer's files.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk, and
ck its icon to start the application.

wnload PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

Format Printer Disks file from the list, then click **Open**. (This file was
the *Printer Utilities* folder inside the *PhaserTools* folder.)

npt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file name
printer output. Use either the default name given in the edit box or
name.

to send the file to the printer.

is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a dialog
OK to continue.
returned by the printer, you won't see this dialog box; check your
or the file the utility created for the printer's output.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

station users

C/Windows software for instructions on installing the printer's

files in the *PHSR600* subdirectory, inside the *PHSRTOOL* directory
your hard disk by the installer application.

the following methods to send the *FRMTDISK.PS* file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

g a formatted SCSI hard disk

s are formatted at the factory; check the documentation that came
isk to see if the disk needs formatting.

d disk is formatted, it only needs to be initialized. Use this
ialize the hard disk.

d disk is not formatted, refer to Formatting a SCSI hard disk for
nitializing instructions.

owing topics for more information:

users

rkstation users

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

sers

acintosh software for instructions on installing the printer's files.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk, and
ck its icon to start the application.

wnload PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

Initialize Printer Disks file from the list, then click **Open**. (This file
ed in the *Printer Utilities* folder inside the *PhaserTools* folder.)

npt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file name
printer output. Use either the default name given in the edit box or
name.

to send the file to the printer.

is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a dialog
OK to continue.
returned by the printer, you won't see this dialog box; check your
or the file the utility created for the printer's output.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

station users

C/Windows software for instructions on installing the printer's

files in the *PHSR600* subdirectory, inside the *PHSRTOOL* directory
your hard disk by the installer application.

the following methods to send the *INITDISK.PS* file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

and disabling SysStart Job execution

t Job (*SYSTART.PS*) file enables automatic execution of a file named
s found) on a hard disk connected to the printer's SCSI port, each
s turned on or reset. The SysStart job is similar to an Init file; it
atically each time the printer is turned on.

owing topics for more information:

users

rkstation users

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

sers

acintosh software for instructions on installing the printer's utility

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk, and
k its icon to start the application.

wnload PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

of the following files from the list, then click **Open**. (These files
ed in the *Printer Utilities* folder inside the *PhaserTools* folder.)

e *Set SysStart Job* file to enable automatic execution of the
t job.

e *No SysStart Job* file to disable automatic execution of the
t job.

npt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file name
printer output. Use either the default name given in the edit box or
name.

to send the file to the printer.

t is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a dialog
OK to continue.
returned by the printer, you won't see this dialog box; check your
or the file the utility created for the printer's output.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

station users

C/Windows software for instructions on installing the printer's

files in the *PHSR600* subdirectory, inside the *PHSRTOOL* directory
your hard disk by the installer application.

of the following files:

e *SYSTART.PS* file to enable automatic execution of the
t job.

e *NOSYSTRT.PS* file to disable automatic execution of the
t job.

the following methods to send the desired file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send a file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ntrol SysStart Job execution from the printer's front panel.

SCSI Startup Mode option in the **Printer Defaults** menu. See
Front Panel for instructions on using the printer's front panel.

er **On** or **Off**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USING THE PRINTER'S PARALLEL PORT

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

an asynchronous parallel port that lets you interface with PCs. The
ports uni-directional (default) and bi-directional communications.

owing topics for more information:

meouts

al status reporting

t pin signals

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

timeouts

he parallel port, be sure to type this command in DOS at the PC
vailable, use LPT2) to disable timeouts. In Windows, connect to

```
MODE LPT1:,,P
```


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

onal status reporting

l communications, the parallel port supports two modes:
ode and Nibble Mode. The interpretation of interface signals
current mode. Compatibility Mode provides host-to-printer
n a manner compatible with a uni-directional interface. Nibble
rinter-to-host communication and may be combined with
ode to provide bi-directional communication.

rmation, refer to the IEEE P1284 document for parallel interfaces.

l utility files are provided for support of operating systems and
ch as Windows 95, that are capable of bi-directional status reporting
nnected to the parallel port.

a special cable; refer to Ordering Interface cables and adapters for
rdering the standard parallel cable available from Tektronix.

and 3.1 do not support bi-directional status reporting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

s shipped with the uni-directional mode enabled.

nstructions in PC/Windows software to install the printer's software.
y Install to automatically install the software, or select the *Printer*
n in the **Custom Install: Utilities** window.

files in the *PHSR600* subdirectory, inside the *PHSRTOOL* directory
your hard disk by the installer application.

of the following files.

e *BIDIR.PS* file to enable bi-directional status reporting on a
port.

e *UNIDIR.PS* file to disable bi-directional status reporting.

the following methods to send the desired file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ort pin signals

s the parallel port's connected pins; other pins are not connected.

als

le names: ity/Nibble	Return pin	Signal source	Description
sy	19	Printer	■ C mode: Positive true = not ready for data ■ N mode: Data bits 3 then 7, then busy status
	20	Printer	■ C mode: Positive true = online ■ N mode: Data bits 1 then 5
	21	Printer	■ C mode: Negative true = data transfer acknowledge ■ N mode: Data qualifier
aAvail	22	Printer	■ C mode: Negative true = printer fault exists that prevents printing ■ N mode: Negative low = data ready, then data bits 0 then 4
DataReq	23	Printer	■ C mode: Positive true = printer error exists, such as media tray empty ■ N mode: Data bits 2 then 6

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

als (cont'd.)

le names: ity/Nibble	Return pin	Signal source	Description
	24	Host	■ C mode: Positive true data input ■ N mode: Not used
	25	Host	■ C mode: Positive true data input ■ N mode: Not used
	26	Host	■ C mode: Positive true data input ■ N mode: Not used
	27	Host	■ C mode: Positive true data input ■ N mode: Not used
	28	Host	■ C mode: Positive true data input ■ N mode: Not used
	29	Host	■ C mode: Positive true data input ■ N mode: Not used
	30	Host	■ C mode: Positive true data input ■ N mode: Not used
	31	Host	■ C mode: Positive true data input ■ N mode: Not used
RTS	32	Host	■ C mode: Negative true = reset interface ■ N mode: Set positive

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

als (cont'd.)

le names: ity/Nibble	Return pin	Signal source	Description
stClk	33	Host	■ C mode: Negative true = transfer data into printer input latch on rising edge ■ N mode: Negative true = transfer Extensibility Request value into printer input latch on rising edge
284 Active	34	Host	■ C mode: Negative true = select printer ■ N mode: Used in conjunction with HostBusy for 1284 hardware handshaking
stBusy	35	Host	■ C mode: Not used ■ N mode: Used in conjunction with 1284 Active for 1284 hardware handshaking
High		Host	■ Positive true = host signals valid ■ Negative true = host signals invalid
Logic High		Printer	■ Positive true = printer on ■ Negative true = printer off

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using Different Printer Language Modes

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ecognizes the following printer or
tion languages:

ewlett-Packard's Graphics Language)

tion users who want to use applications that output data in these
ge modes, must first set up a printer port to receive data in a
age.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

owing topics for more information:

ne files

stScript and HP-GL job and wait timeouts

he printer's language mode

nter language mode changes

ault HP-GL pen colors

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the files

re available on the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM and diskette.

C/Windows software for instructions on installing the printer's utility

files in the *PHSR600* subdirectory, inside the *PHSRTOOL* directory
your hard disk by the installer application.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ostScript and HP-GL job timeouts

ob timeout is the same as the PostScript job timeout.

neouts can be set in the printer:

meout is the amount of time in seconds that the printer waits for me from the computer during a job. If the data stream pauses than the specified number of seconds, a timeout error is and the job is canceled.

neout is the amount of time any single job may be active before nt.

Script mode, if the value is exceeded, a timeout error is ted.

GL mode, if the timeout value is too small, an image may be split two pages; if the value is too large, multiple-page prints may be ed on one page.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONFIG.PS file to change the PostScript and HP-GL job and wait
When sent to the printer, your edited version of the *CONFIG.PS* file
ues in the printer, but *only* while the printer is turned on; if the printer
eset the values return to their defaults. To restore your desired
, you must send your edited *CONFIG.PS* file to the printer again.

.PS file affects printer operation. If the printer is shared on a network,
e may affect the prints requested by other users.

he printer's port to receive PostScript; see Printing PostScript files
ons.

utility files on the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM; refer to Installing
instructions.

CONFIG.PS file to your hard disk, and open the file in a text editor.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ues for the printer are as follows:

for the job timeout

s for the wait timeout

s for the manual feed timeout.

value of **0** indicates no timeout; the printer waits indefinitely.

example, the timeouts are set to their default values.

```
t begin
assword () def
        /JobTimeOut 0 def
        /WaitTimeOut 40 def
ntdict end setsystemparams
t begin
rrentpagedevice /ManualFeedTimeout known
anualFeedTimeout 60 def  } if
ntdict end setpagedevice
```


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONFIG.PS to specify different timeouts, substitute new values for
g lines.

out	**Permitted timeout values**	**Suggested timeout values**
imeOut	0, or 15 to 999	0
TimeOut	0 to unlimited	0 (To avoid timeouts or job cancellation on Windows multiple-page or multiple-copy print jobs, you may want to set the WaitTimeOut to a high value or to zero.)
alFeedTimeout	0 to unlimited	300 (Five minutes should give you enough time to reach the printer and load media.)
ecify no timeout	0	

problems in Windows, also increase the Windows WaitTimeOut to 999.
meout problems in Windows for instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the following methods to send the *CONFIG.PS* file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

g the printer's language mode

printer supports the following printer languages:

Level 1 and Level 2

ewlett-Packard Graphics Language)

fault configuration, the printer expects to receive PostScript data on want to use an HP-GL application, you must explicitly set up a ceive HP-GL data, or enable Adobe IntelliSelect™ automatic ion.

nguage of the printer between PostScript and HP-GL is ne ports, such as parallel, serial, or LocalTalk, can each be rently. You can change the default language on any port so inter is turned on it expects to receive PostScript or HP-GL data on If automatic language selection is enabled on a particular port, it fault on that port, allowing you to send PostScript and HP-GL files to

anguage on any port remain in effect even if the printer is turned off

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

g files affect printer operation. If the printer is shared on a network, using
ay affect the prints requested from other users.

owing topics for more information:

stScript files

-GL files

utomatic language selection

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

stScript files

T.PS file to change a printer's port to accept *only* PostScript data. his file to a port, the printer expects PostScript files on that port. The change is persistent across print jobs and across printer power send the *PSCRIPT.PS* file to the printer.

utility files on the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM; refer to Installing instructions.

the following methods to send the *PSCRIPT.PS* file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer. ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File er**.)

ation users: Send the file to a printer as you would any ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

-GL files

S file to change a printer's port to accept *only* HP-GL data. After
e to a port, the printer expects HP-GL files on that port. The port's
e is persistent across print jobs and across printer power cycles.
HPGL.PS file to the printer.

utility files on the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM; refer to Installing
instructions.

the following methods to send the *HPGL.PS* file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send the file to a printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

utomatic language selection

file to change a port to automatic language selection. After you a port, the printer accepts PostScript or HP-GL files on that port. age change is persistent across print jobs and across printer power automatic language selection, send the *AIS.PS* file to the printer.

utility files on the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM; refer to Installing instructions.

the following methods to send the *AIS.PS* file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer. ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File er**.)

ation users: Send the file to a printer as you would any ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rinter language mode changes

owing topics for more information:

-GL mode

stScript mode

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

-GL mode

s an HP-GL file that prints a single line of text if the printer is -GL mode.

EST.PLT file to the printer after you send the *HPGL.PS* or *AIS.PS* file, e language change was made correctly.

utility files on the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM; refer to Installing instructions.

the following methods to send the *HPGLTEST.PLT* file to

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer. ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File er**.)

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any e.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tScript mode

PostScript file that prints a single line of text if the printer is tScript mode.

T.PS file to the printer after you send the *PSCRIPT.PS* or *AIS.PS* file, e language change was made correctly.

utility files on the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM; refer to Installing instructions.

the following methods to send the *PSTEST.PS* file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer. ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File er**.)

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any e.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

efault HP-GL pen colors

ENS.PS file to change the color and width of the default pen colors.
lotter actually has only six pens, but the printer's emulation
256 pens.

ngs cannot be made persistent across printer power cycles; pen
o the default when the printer is turned off. To restore your pen
st download your edited *HPGLPENS.PS* file to the printer whenever
been turned off or reset.

hange is persistent across jobs but not across printer power cycles;
GL jobs that immediately follow it until the next printer reset.

ENS.PS file affects printer operation. If the printer is shared on a network,
e may affect the prints requested from other users.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IS.PS file, pen number, pen width, red value, green value, and blue
n parentheses after **/ColorSetup,** as shown below:

```
/ColorSetup (pen_number width red_value
green_value blue_value...)
```

example, all pen widths are set to **0.35** millimeters. Pen 0 is white
ground pen color), pen 1 is black, pen 2 is red, pen 3 is green, pen
is cyan, pen 6 is magenta, and pen 7 is yellow.

```
A%) << /Password ()
       /ColorSetup (0 0.35 1.0 1.0 1.0
                    1 0.35 0.0 0.0 0.0
                    2 0.35 1.0 0.0 0.0
                    3 0.35 0.0 1.0 0.0
                    4 0.35 0.0 0.0 1.0
                    5 0.35 0.0 1.0 1.0
                    6 0.35 1.0 0.0 1.0
                    7 0.35 1.0 1.0 0.0)
    >> setdevparams
```


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

s for pen numbers are **0** through **255**. Pen width is measured in
d, green, and blue values can be any number between **0.0** and **1.0**.
ble shows the red, green, and blue combinations for each of the
rs.

Pen color number	Color	Red value	Green value	Blue value
0	white	1.0	1.0	1.0
1	black	0.0	0.0	0.0
2	red	1.0	0.0	0.0
3	green	0.0	1.0	0.0
4	blue	0.0	0.0	1.0
5	cyan	0.0	1.0	1.0
6	magenta	1.0	0.0	1.0
7	yellow	1.0	1.0	0.0

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

en, you must redefine pens 0 through 7 first, then add the new

s and colors to values other than those in the *HPGLPENS.PS* file,
os:

he printer's port to receive PostScript; see Printing PostScript files
ons.

utility files on the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM; refer to Installing
instructions.

IPGLPENS.PS file to your hard disk, and open the file in a

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

and substitute the values you want for those in the file.
es can be any decimal number between **0.0** and **1.0**.

le, to change pen 4 to a purple color and a width of .5 mm, edit
PENS.PS file and change the line for pen number 4 to the

```
4 0.5 1.0 0.0 0.5
```

have finished editing the file, use one of the following methods to
PGLPENS.PS file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CARING FOR YOUR PRINTER

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

owing topics for more information on cleaning procedures:

nts

ning

cleaning

he waste bin

and moving the printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

hints

est print quality and the most reliable printer operation, follow these
es:

ektronix ColorStix® ink sticks specifically made for the
0 printer.

broken ink sticks into the printer.

nk sticks protected from dirt, dust, and breakage.

ndle the ink sticks except when loading them into the printer.
handling can cause the ink sticks to jam or break.

n print quality, use the information in Troubleshooting.

printer regularly, as described in this chapter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

remain ***ON*** while cleaning.

that you use isopropyl alcohol that is at least **90% pure** (99% best results).

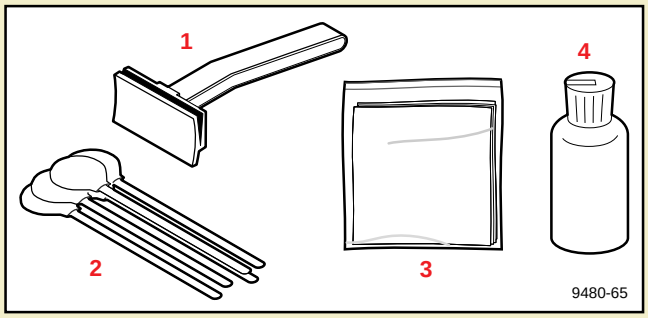
ng Kit that is shipped with the printer includes the following

g tool

leaning swabs

e cleaning cloths

ottle for isopropyl alcohol



ement Cleaning Kit
-00) also includes 10 pre-soaked alcohol cloths.

eparately order a pack of 10 pre-soaked alcohol cloths
-00).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

aning

e, you will get the best results from your printer if you perform these procedures once a week or according to how much media you have

owing topics for more information:

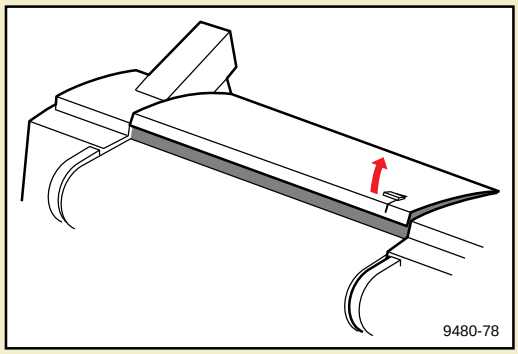
s and paper guides

ollers

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

s and paper guides

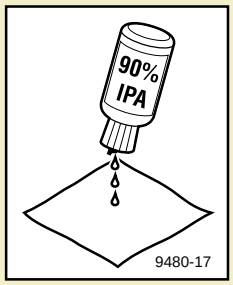
ollers and paper guides after
(34 x 44 in.) sheets of media
100 m/300 ft. of 36-inch wide roll



is currently loaded, remove it and set

e top cover, lift the latch that is on the upper right side of the printer;
cover.

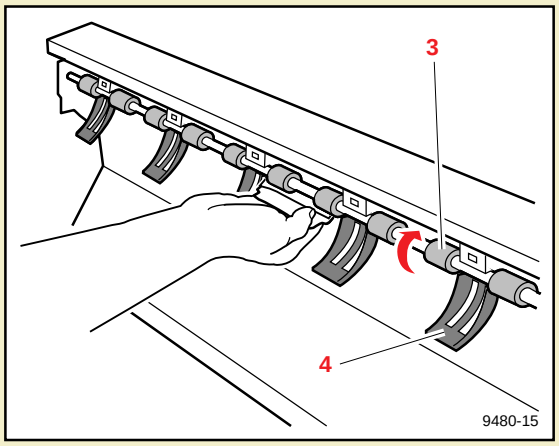
int-free cloth with 90% pure isopropyl alcohol
re-soaked alcohol cloth).



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

of the feed rollers. Using your
e each roller to clean its entire

of the paper guides gently.



I

too hard on the paper guides, they can become detached; to avoid this,
e hand to support the guide as you clean it with the other. If a guide dies
ached, carefully snap it back into place.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ollers

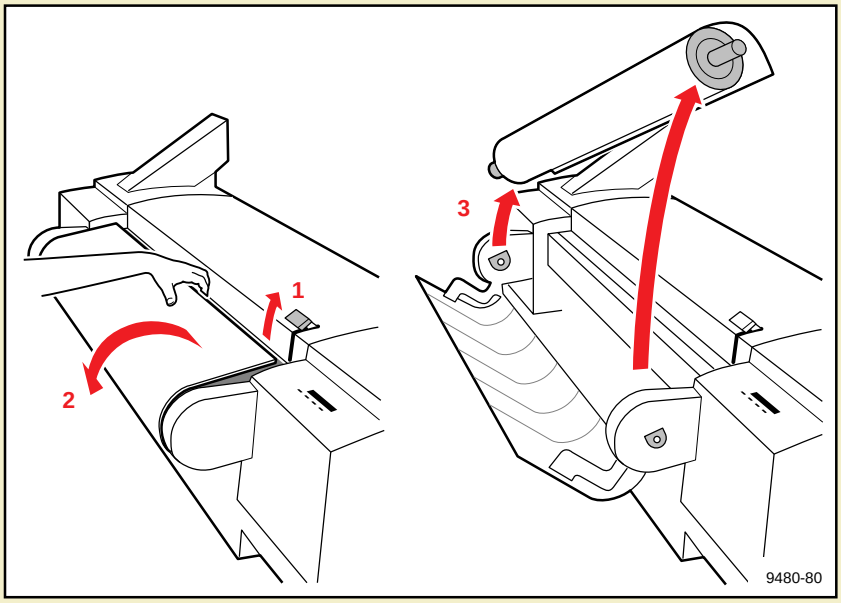
ort rollers after every 80 E-size (34 x 44 in.) sheets of media
100 m/300 ft. of 36-inch wide roll media) or if you observe vertical
nts.

e

cover latch
er right side
er).

aper roll

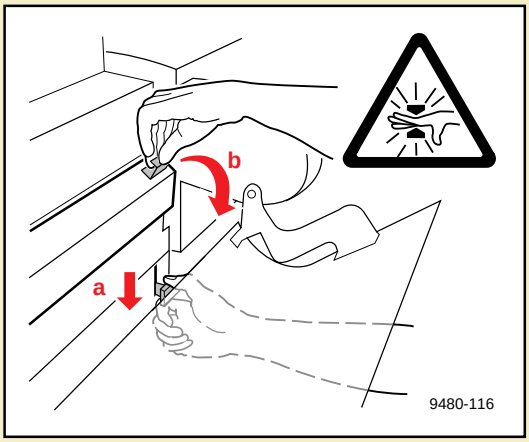
e media roll.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

transport rollers

e exit cover, push the latch (**a**, on
ght side of the printer) ***DOWN***,
ng the exit cover handle (**b**);
e the cover down.

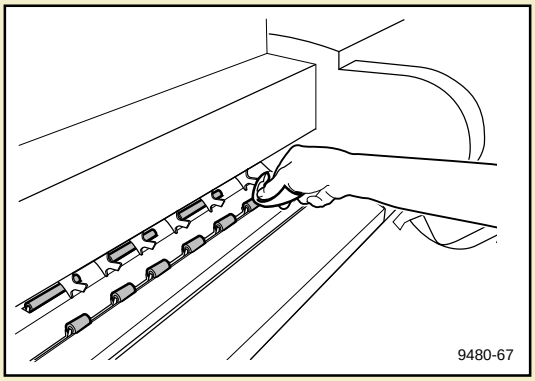


N G

ng the exit cover, be careful not to
and between the paper roll cover and
er

-free cloth that has been moistened
pyl alcohol (or a pre-soaked alcohol
ly wipe each of the transport rollers
any dust or residue.

h roller to make sure that you clean
rface.

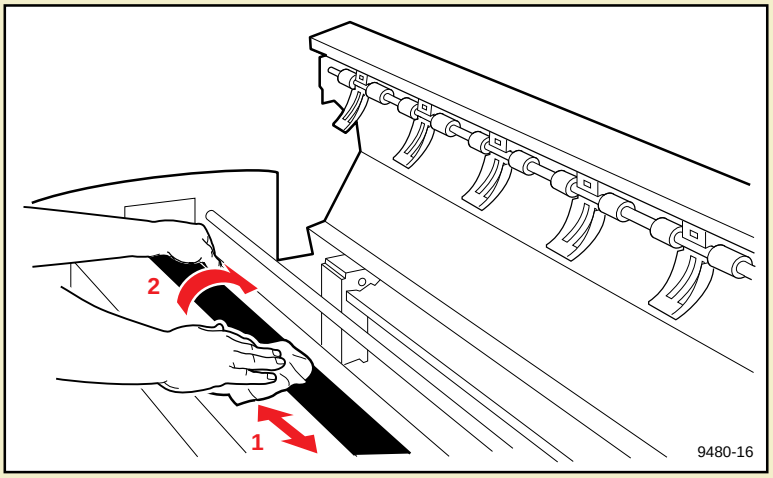


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

after every 80 E-size (34 x 44 in.) sheets of media, which is
00 m/300 ft. of 36-inch wide roll media (two media rolls).

ge, lint-free cloth
n isopropyl alcohol
oaked alcohol
e the entire length of
o remove any dust
due.

hand, rotate the
pose and clean
drum; clean its
ce in this manner.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

al cleaning

ccasional cleaning procedures when you notice a problem with the
nedia feed reliability. Each procedure indicates a general guideline.

owing topics for more information:

on blade and paper clamp

ers

tle and exit rollers

ne printhead

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

n blade and paper clamp

back tension blade when you notice ink on the leading margin of

paper clamp when the printer experiences frequent media jams.

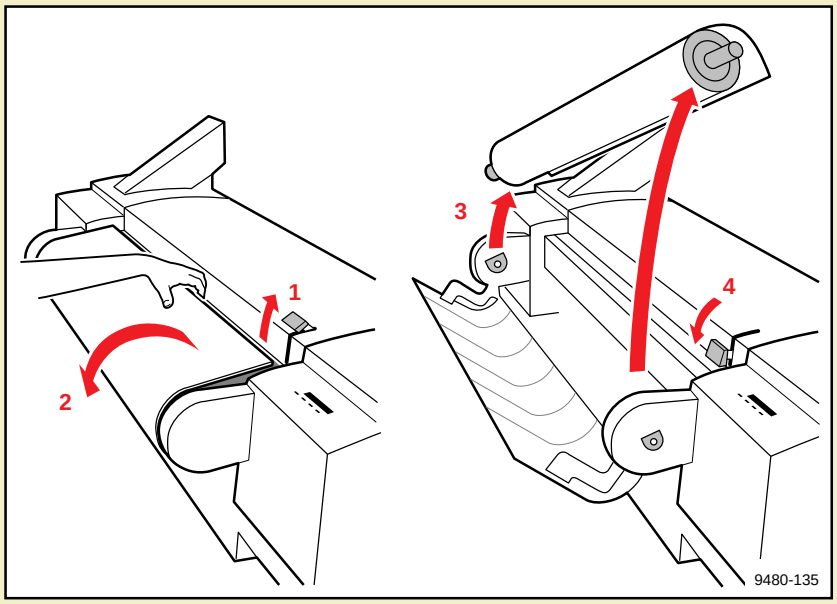
e

cover latch
er right side
er).

aper roll

e media roll.

p cover latch
g it down.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ont panel for cleaning access

ter's front panel, press the **Menu** button; the printer displays this

```
Help Pages
<----    ---->    Menu
```

rrow button (**--->**) until you see this message:

```
Utilities
<----    ---->    Menu
```

enu button; the printer displays this message:

```
Test Print
<----    ---->    Menu
```

rrow button until you see this message:

```
Clean Paper Clamp
<----    ---->    Select
```

elect button. This raises the paper clamp. The front panel is message:

```
Open Top Cover
```


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

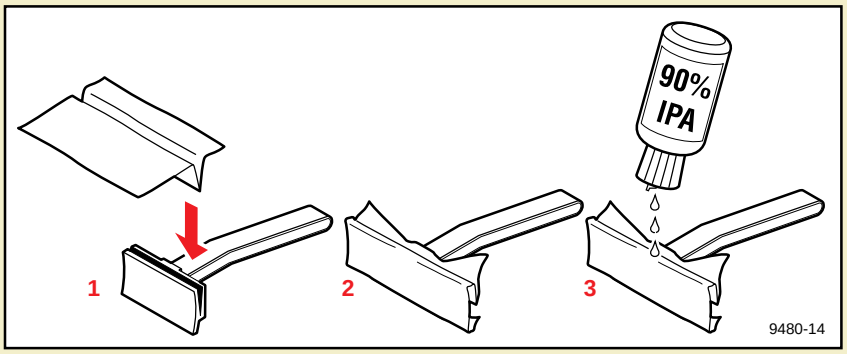
back tension blade

N G

nsion blade, the steel belt behind it, and the paper clamp are very sharp. sonal injury, make sure that you use the cleaning tool and keep your from the blade and belt.

sibility, you can er away from access it from

oth has not d it in thirds,



olded edge of to the “V” opening of the cleaning tool.

loth around the edges of the tool, as shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

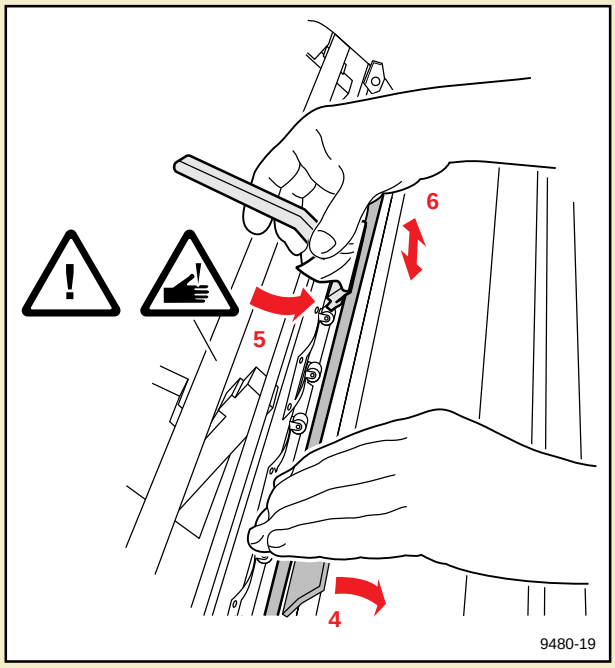
sing a dry cloth, moisten it with 90% pure isopropyl alcohol.

d on the back tension blade's
l hold it in that position; this
de away from the drum.

ngers to hold the cloth
tool. Position the tool under
t notches onto the blade to
guide, cleaning the front and
blade at the same time.

section of the blade by wiping
orth 3-4 times with pressure.

ds to clean the other end of



s especially dirty, you may need to add more alcohol to the lint-free cloth
cloth.

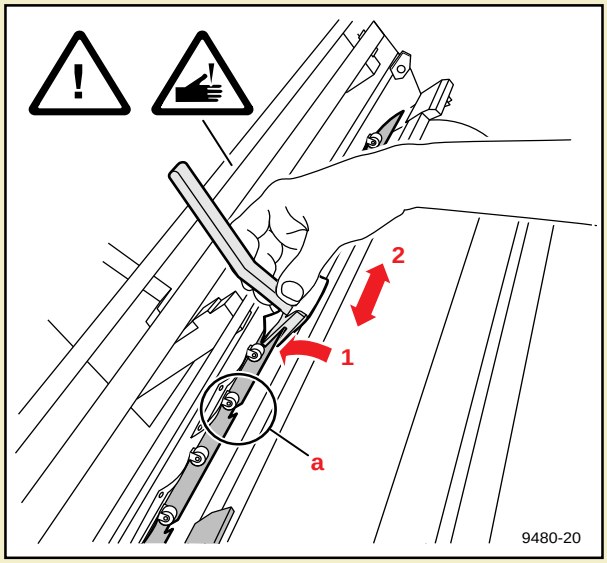
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

paper clamp

at you have set the printer's front panel to **`Clean Paper Clamp`** (Setting the r cleaning access); this allows easy access to the parts of the printer that leaned.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

-free cloth that has been
with 90% pure isopropyl
d inserted into the cleaning tool
ing the paper clamp), place the
g of the tool over the paper



lamp by wiping back and forth
ith *gentle* pressure. Clean a
on at a time and repeat the
til the entire clamp is clean.

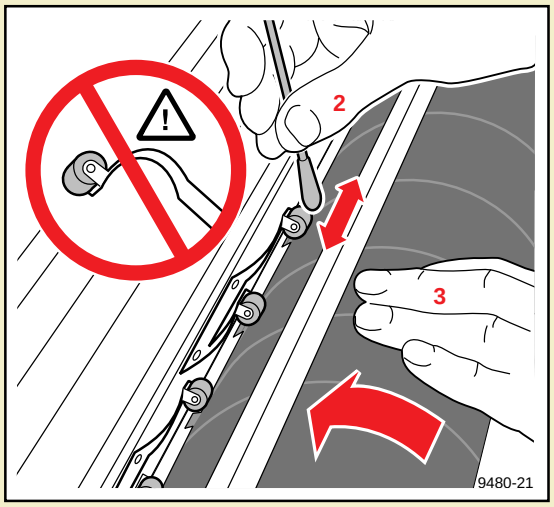
I

lamp is more flexible than the back tension blade; when cleaning the
ot use as much pressure as in the previous procedure, or you might bend
Do not twist the tool when cleaning, or you might bend the clamp or catch
the clamp's "cutouts" (**a**).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rs

s are located behind the drum.
n you notice ink offsetting or
our prints.



n swab from the cleaning kit that
noistened with 90% pure
lcohol.

surface of the roller by rubbing it
ab.

drum away from you (toward the back of the printer); this rotates
ollers. Clean the entire surface of the roller.

N

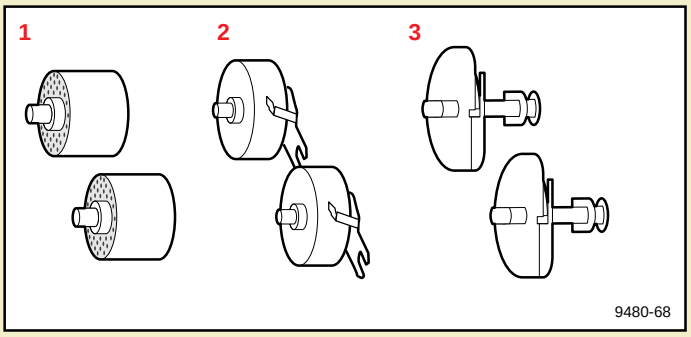
ne roller away from the drum; the metal that attaches it to the printer is
and can be permanently bent.

ps **2** and **3** for each of the rollers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

le and exit rollers

e ink offsetting (most
when fusing is turned
rs (most often
fusing is turned off) on
can do the following:



fuser shuttle and fuser

e fuser components.

exit rollers.

der number 016-1472-00) contains these replaceable parts:

er wheels: Replace when you replace the fuser wheel.

heels: Replace after printing 100-200 E-size (34 x 44 in.) sheets
ately 100-200 m/300-600 ft. of 36-inch wide media roll).

Replace if paper cuts appear jagged or your printer experiences
ue to the cutter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ont panel

hat the media roll is not loaded and the printer's front panel displays

ter's front panel, press the **Menu** button; the printer displays this

```
Help Pages
<----    ---->    Menu
```

rrow button (**--->**) until you see this message:

```
Utilities
<----    ---->    Menu
```

enu button; the printer displays this message:

```
Test Print
<----    ---->    Menu
```


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rrow button until you see this message:

```
Change Fuser or Cutter
<----    ---->    Select
```

Select button. The fuser shuttle moves to the far right side of and the front panel displays this message:

```
Open Exit Cover
```

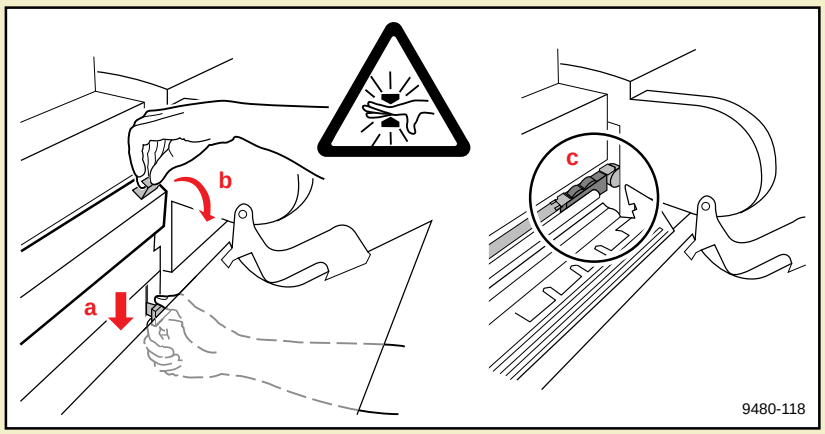
xposing the fuser shuttle for instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

fuser shuttle

hot already removed the media roll, do it now.

e exit cover,
tch (**a**, on the
side of the
WN, while
exit cover
slowly rotate the
n. The fuser
s visible on the
side the printer.



N G

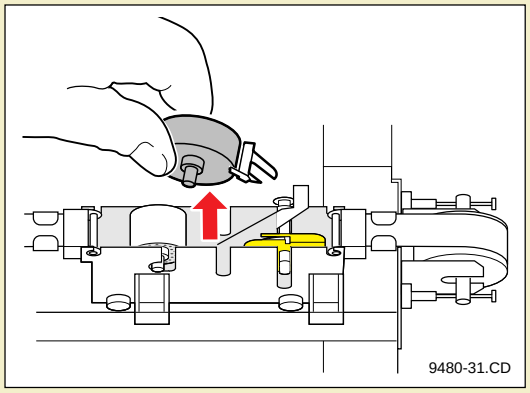
ng the exit cover, be careful not to pinch your hand between the paper
d the exit cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

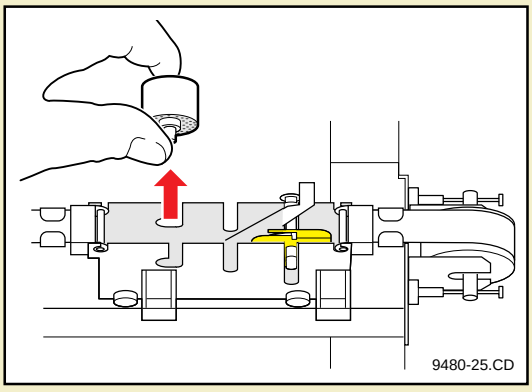
e fuser components

move the fuser wheel before the foam

e fuser wheel (and media support) out of the printer.



e foam oiler wheel. Be careful not the foam; it is filled with oil and nt drip.

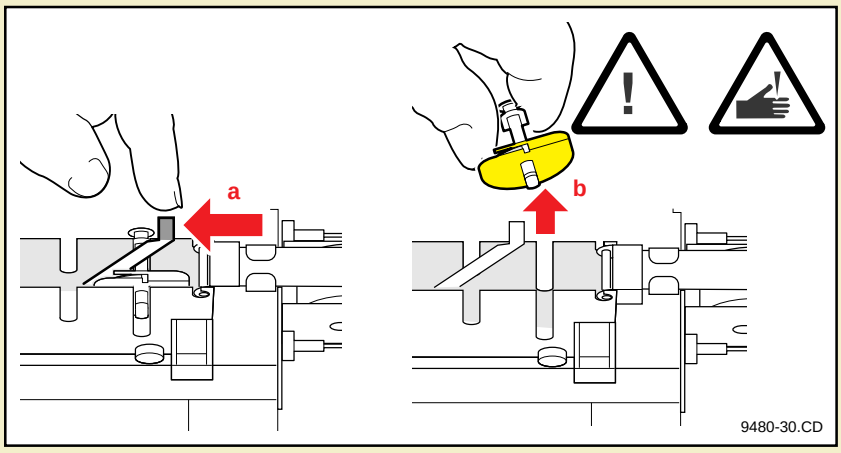


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e cutter:

N G

ade is sharp. To always handle it or yellow over.



e lever on the o unlock it.

cutter out of the printer.

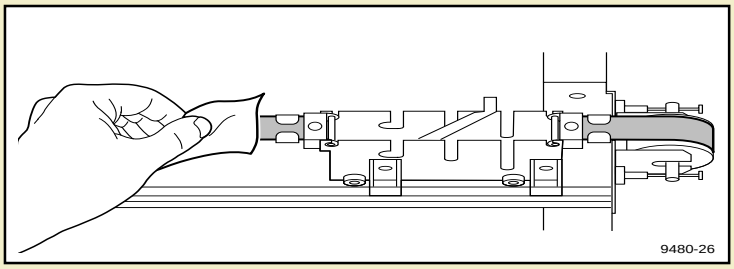
eplacing the fuser components, dispose of the old components as ce waste.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

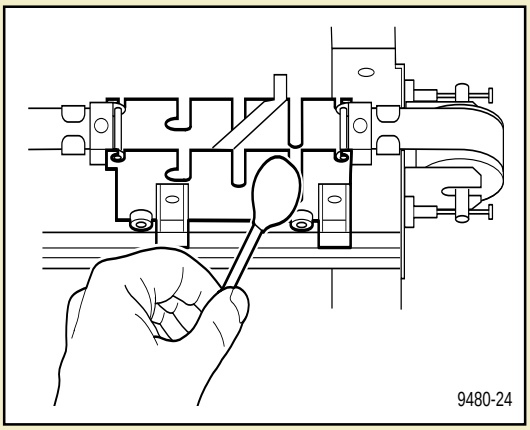
fuser shuttle

a small vacuum or air
se it to remove the
.

belt (near the foam
) with a *dry*, lint-free



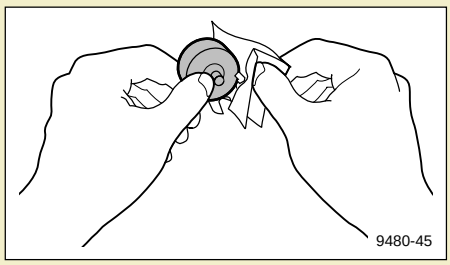
e ink in the fuser
a, wipe it with a foam swab that has
ened with 90% isopropyl alcohol.



ot to get any alcohol on the front and
he fuser shuttle or the “shelf”
the shuttle. It is oiled for smooth travel
hol will remove the lubricant.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ot replacing the fuser wheel, wipe it with an alcohol- moistened
th.

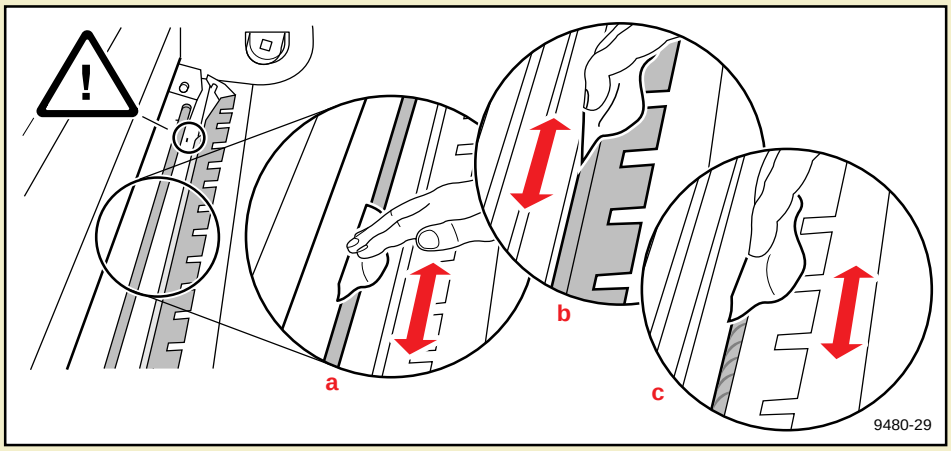


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

exit

llers
ean the
eplace

ed
ean



netal exit roller thoroughly to remove any paper dust build-up;
ller to clean its entire surface.

netal fuser plate (especially the section closest to the rubber
emove dust and ink.

ubber exit roller thoroughly; turn the roller to clean its entire

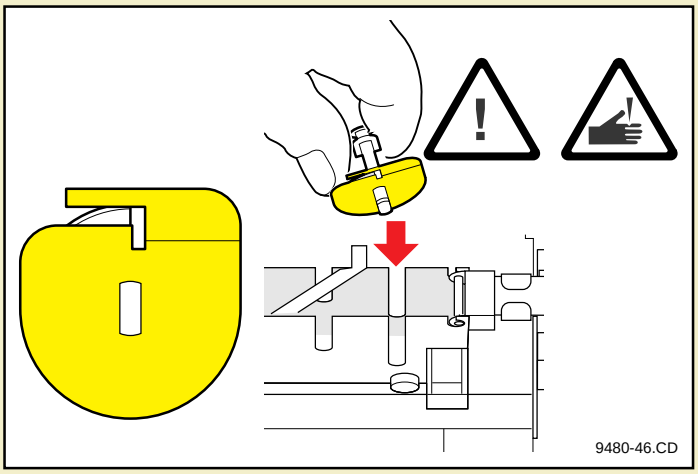
maging or obscuring the exit sensor, do not get any alcohol on it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

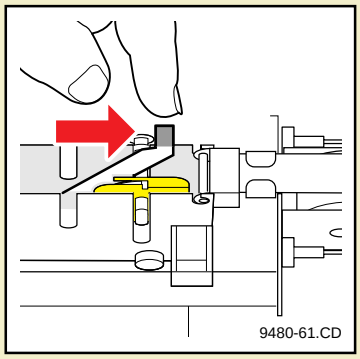
fuser components

e inserting new
e-inserting the existing
se steps:

utter blade into its slot
r shuttle, making sure
posed blade is facing
wn.

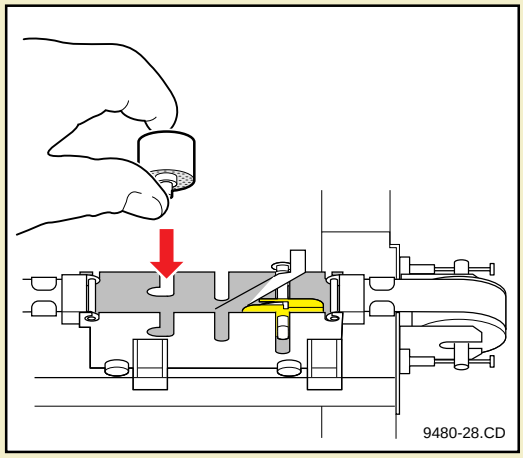


that the cutter is seated in the slots on the
re the cutter by sliding the locking lever.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

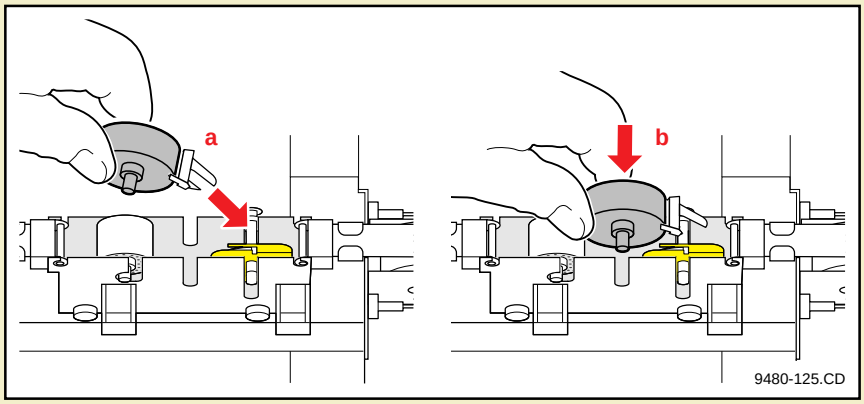
e foam oiler wheel by its shaft,
o its slot on the fuser shuttle. Be
to squeeze the foam; it is filled with
oil might drip.



user wheel (and the media

he prongs of the media support
e cutter's shaft.

he fuser
nto its slot on
er shuttle.
n place, spin
er wheel to
that it is
d properly.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the fuser shuttle is pushed to the far right or left, then close the exit
is open, close the top cover and press down on the latch. When
warms up, the front panel displays **Ready**.

e media roll and close the paper roll cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ader if you notice these symptoms:

do not fall when the slider(s) are pulled back.

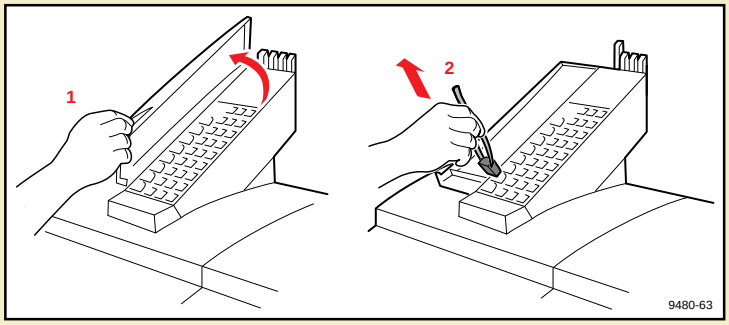
not move easily (sticking).

jams.

ps to clean the ink

oader cover.

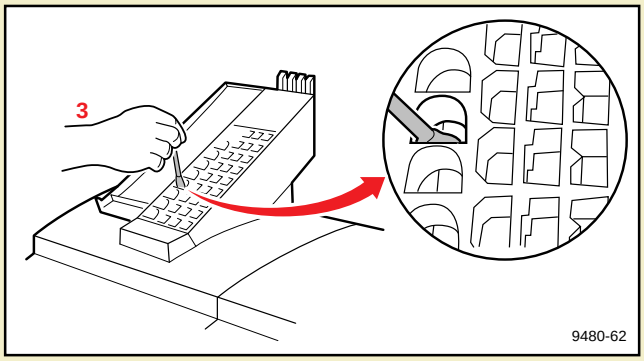
y ink sticks that are
nk loader. Use a pair
s or a sharp knife.



o remove the ink loader, first remove all ink sticks from the ink loader.
noving the ink loader for instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

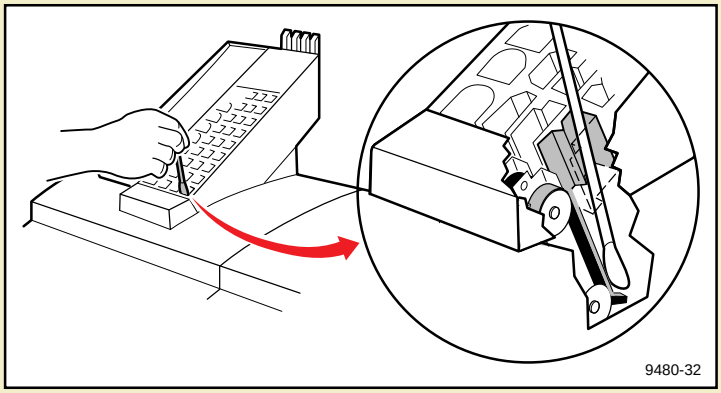
cohol-moistened swab into
ng and wipe back and forth
any ink residue.



ottom opening for

an alcohol swab,
parts of the belt
accessible.

e opening
the belt that may
k build-up.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ing the ink loader, reload the ink sticks and close the cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e printhead

ve missing dots or a missing horizontal line, clean the printhead,
anel menu function:

lenu button on the front panel.

rrow button (**--->**) until the front panel displays this message:

```
Utilities
<---  --->   Menu
```

lenu button.

rrow button until the front panel displays this message:

```
Clean Head
<---  --->   Select
```

elect button.

anel displays messages while it cleans the printhead; this takes
tely 5 minutes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rrow button until you see this message:

```
Test Print
<---   --->   Print
```

rint button; the Test Print demonstrates the condition of the ets.

clear the problem, turn the printer off for two hours. When you turn gain, print the Test Print from the Utilities menu in the front panel. If exists, you may need to call for a service technician to manually wiper. Refer to If you need help for information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the waste bin

emains locked in place until it needs emptying. There are two
you should empty the waste bin:

displays Empty Waste Bin

ving the printer: When you prepare the printer for shipment or
printer a long distance, in which case you must use the **Utilities**

ou remove the waste bin, be sure to empty it completely.

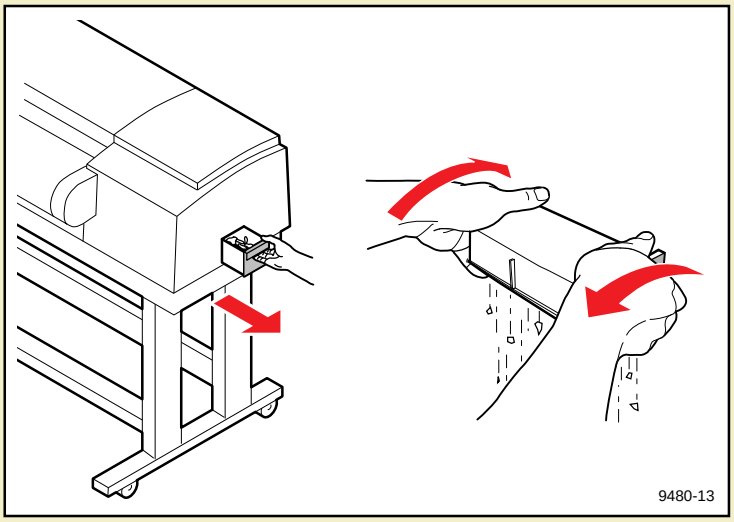
nontoxic; it can be treated as normal office waste.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

displays Empty Waste Bin

in is locked during
ation. Do not pull the
ss the front panel
displayed.

e waste bin by
ut. You may have to
on the waste bin to



contents of the waste
tly twisting it while
ver a trash bin.

e waste bin in the printer.

used ink into the printer. Reusing waste ink ruins the printhead and
he printer warranty.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ing the printer

s the waste bin in place until it needs emptying. However, you can
menu to unlock the waste bin so that you can empty it before the
sage prompts you to do so.

rinter is on and the **Ready** message appears in the front panel,
Utilities menu by pressing the **Menu** button, then press an arrow
you see this message:

```
Utilities
<---   --->   Menu
```

enu button.

row button until you see this message:

```
Unlock Waste Bin
<---   --->   Select
```

elect button to unlock the waste bin. The front panel displays this

```
Waste Bin Unlocked
```

d empty the waste bin (see Front panel displays Empty Waste Bin),
ert it into the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

button on the front panel until the **Ready** message appears in the

printer. Refer to Repacking and moving the printer for information
prepare the printer for shipment or a long move.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

g and moving the printer

owing topics for more information:

begin

l media

e printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

egin

waste bin (refer to the instructions on Before moving the printer);
e printer off.

ter cool down for 15 minutes before you move it so that the ink has
dify.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

media

e power cord and any network cables.

op cover and paper roll cover; rewind the media onto the roll and
roll.

e paper roll from the holder and repack the paper roll in its original
ox.

he empty paper roll holder into the printer; close the paper roll

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nk loader cover and remove any unused ink sticks. You can use
o remove any ink sticks that you cannot remove with your hands.

ohol swab to clean inside the ink loader (see Ink loader).

ink loader from the printer and repack it in its original shipping box.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ree cloth to wipe off any dirt, dust, or oil in and on the printer.

y other accessories in the original Tektronix shipping box(es). If have the original Tektronix shipping boxes, contact Tektronix for a g kit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rinter

ese shipping restraints:

restraint for the printhead.

g blocks for the fuser.

g block for the top cover latch.

ors and secure them with adhesive tape.

leveling legs under the printer; this allows clearance for the printer
ely on its wheels.

front casters (push the locking lever to the *up* position.

pallet ramps to the pallet (refer to the *Phaser 600 Repacking*
s).

uide the printer onto the pallet.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

N G

ts size and weight, always use two people to move the printer off or onto
Failure to do so may injure a person or damage the printer.

printer to the pallet with the original packing materials.

e printer in the original Tektronix shipping box. If you need
nt packaging, contact Tektronix for the Repackaging Kit.

strapping kit to secure the printer and its components.

rranty valid, you must first empty the waste bin, remove the ink
nk loader, detach the ink loader, replace the transit restraint on the
ship the printer in its Tektronix shipping box with the appropriate
ls. Call Tektronix at **1-800-835-6100** or your nearest Tektronix dealer
packaging.

N

r warranty valid, you must first empty the waste bin, remove the ink sticks
loader, detach the ink loader, replace the transit restraint on the
hen ship the printer in its Tektronix shipping box with the appropriate
erials. Call Tektronix at 1-800-835-6100 or your nearest Tektronix dealer
ent packaging.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ROUBLESHOOTING

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ed help

stance, contact your local Tektronix dealer or sales representative or ed resources:

	How to access	Details
lotline	**1-800-835-6100** US & Canada	Monday through Friday 6:00 am to 5:00 pm PST
	1-800-835-6100 **US** 1-800-563-1289 **Canada**	Monday through Friday 6:00 am to 5:00 pm PST
	Outside US & Canada: contact local Tektronix dealer or office	
etin Board	(503) 685-4504	24 hours/day, 7 days/week
rt:	support@ColorPrinters.tek.com	
p	http://www.tek.com/Color_Printers/	
server	ftp.tek.com/Color_Printers	
	keyword Tektronix	
	go Tektronix	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	How to access	Details
x system	**(503) 682-7450** direct outside US and Canada	24 hours/day, 7 days/week
	1-800-835-6100 toll-free for US and Canada	24 hours/day, 7 days/week
	Refer to Using the automated fax systems.	24 hours/day, 7 days/week

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ng files from the Tektronix
er Information Server

orkstation utility files included with the printer on a PC diskette let rinter to select between media trays, print quality modes, color es and other features. If you don't have the means of transferring he PC diskette, you can request files from the Tektronix Color Printer ver, an automatic file serving program on the Internet that responds les.

ange electronic mail with other Internet sites, you can access the Printer Information Server. From this server you can retrieve driver nd color printer information.

ronic mail requests for files to the following address:

color_printer_info@TEKTRONIX.TEK.COM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

st of information available on the server, type the following at the
:

send index

full index for any library, type:

send index from *library-name*

gle file from a directory, type:

send *filename* from *library-name*

e size, type:

send list of *filename* from *library-name*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e automated fax systems

e to using the Customer Support Hotline, and to provide up-to-date
kly, Tektronix has set up HAL and EuroHAL, two interactive,
ystems. These automated fax systems provide Macintosh, PC, and
s with the latest technical hints and tips (like color matching),
mon technical problems, and application notes (like CorelDRAW!
s).

L or EuroHAL from anywhere in the world. The fax systems are
rs a day, seven days a week.

owing topics for more information:

the U.S.A. and Canada

AL in Europe

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the U.S.A. and Canada

x machine and a touch-tone voice telephone, you can order a HAL
l of the information offered by HAL.

ing documents from HAL, order a catalog listing the numbers of
cuments. You may want to replace your catalog periodically, since the
en updated.

call, write down the area code and telephone number for your fax
HAL will ask you to key this number through the keypad on your
hone. If you are calling from outside the United States or Canada,
to know the international access code to reach your country from
States. Without a complete fax number, HAL cannot call your
e.

682-7450 (direct) or, in the U.S. and Canada, call **1-800-835-6100**.
om a touch-tone voice telephone.

mpt, choose the option for **technical documentation via fax**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ugh the voice-prompted (English) menu.

idual documents by entering the desired document's number as
e HAL catalog. Enter the number by using your telephone's

der up to three documents per call.

atalog or documents you request are faxed to you in a matter of

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AL in Europe

es many documents, some in English and some in other European
ocal version of the document you want is available, EuroHAL will
anguage. Otherwise, it will send English documents.

ne-dial telephone and a fax machine, you can use EuroHAL. If your
tar (*) and hash mark (#) keys then it can probably use tones; ask
hone supplier if you are not sure. If your telephone does not have
s a dial, you will need to buy a *tone dialer* from your local telephone
hop. This small box is held to the phone and will send the standard
eed to talk to EuroHAL.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

oHAL, dial one of the numbers listed in the following table.

Country	Numbers
Austria	00 44 1908 681 839
Belgium	
Denmark	
Finland	
Italy	
Norway	
Switzerland	
France	05 90 81 86
Germany	0130 819 220
Holland	09 44 1908 681 839
Spain	07 44 1908 681 839
Sweden	0 09 44 1908 681 839
UK	01908 681 839
Other countries	+44 1908 681 839 (where + is your country's International Access Code)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nswers and asks which language you want to use.

n Press **1**
Press **2**
n Press **3**

ne you use EuroHAL, you should order a catalog. The catalog lists vailable documents and is continuously updated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

sks you for your fax machine number. If you are calling from
UK, add your country code first, as shown in the following

try	Country code	Your area code and fax number		Press # when finished
ia	00 43	area code	fax number	#
um	00 32	area code	fax number	#
nark	00 45	area code	fax number	#
nd	00 358	area code	fax number	#
ce	00 33	area code	fax number	#
nany	00 49	area code	fax number	#
nd	00 31	area code	fax number	#
	00 39	area code	fax number	#
ay	00 47	area code	fax number	#
n	00 34	area code	fax number	#
len	00 46	area code	fax number	#
erland	00 41	area code	fax number	#
		just enter your fax number		#
r countries	00 xx	area code	number	#

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nel messages

displays messages indicating the condition of the printer. Some as **Standby** and **Warming Up**, simply provide status information. s do not require user action. Error messages, such as **Close Exit** ou to perform some action. Use the following table to determine the on for each type of front panel message.

display a numeric error code when it detects certain types of u see a numeric error code, first write down the number. Try turning power and wait at least 15 seconds before turning the power on oes not solve the problem, call your local Tektronix office for all Tektronix Service at **1-800-835-6100** (U.S.) or at **1-800-563-1289**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ages

	Action
	No user action required. The printer is ready to print.
	No user action required. The printer is running an automatic cleaning operation (approximately 5 minutes).
	No user action required.
ing...	No user action required.
	No user action required. The printer is automatically cutting the roll media.
	No user action required. Displayed during print jobs that require large amounts of ink.
	The printer is ready for the media to be loaded.
	Replace the media roll.
	No user action required. May be displayed after you press the **Cancel** button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ages (cont'd.)

	Action
r	Close the top cover; you may need to fully open and then close the cover and its latch.
er	Close the exit cover.
er	Close the cover on the ink loader.
	Make sure that the latch on the top cover is locked.
n	Remove, empty, and reinsert the waste bin.
ed	Turn the printer off, wait at least 15 seconds and turn the printer's power on again. If the failure persists, note the code number in the display. In the U.S., call Tektronix service at **1-800-835-6100**. Outside the U.S., contact your local Tektronix office.
	This message appears when the ink loader has two or fewer ink sticks of a particular color. Open the cover of the ink loader and load ink sticks of that color.
w	This message appears when ink loader is empty of a particular color. The printhead stops printing if ink is not loaded soon. Open the cover of the ink loader and load ink sticks of that color.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

sages (cont'd.)

	Action
.	No user action required. Wait for a period of time (up to approximately 10 minutes).
m Jam Jam	1. Cut the media, if roll media is loaded. 2. Open the top cover and use a pen to move the printhead to the right side. 3. Open the exit cover and move the fuser to one side. 4. Remove the jammed media. Refer to Clearing a media jam for detailed instructions.
er Jam	Open the ink loader cover and remove the jammed ink stick(s).
	No user action required.
	No user action required.
	Press any front panel button or send a print job to bring the printer to Ready (after warming up).
XX min)	No user action required. The printer will be ready in the specified amount of time (more if cleaning cycle is required).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

s and solutions

tools

printer provides several tools for diagnosing and solving various
ns; these tools include the following:

oting quick reference table describes printing problems by
then lists the possible causes and solutions.

0 Color Printer Quick Reference Guide provides easy access
hooting information on media jams, ink jams, and cleaning
s.

tion Page is found in the Help Pages menu (accessed from the
). This page provides useful information for installation and
oting. Refer to Printing the configuration page for instructions.

Handler is loaded from the Printer Defaults menu of the front
ed to diagnose PostScript problems. When a PostScript error
error page prints out if the error handler is enabled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

print quality

roblem with the quality of your prints (such as ink smears, streaks,
s), the probable solution is cleaning one of the printer's components
rs, paper clamp rollers, paper clamp, back tension blade,

printer regularly.

e media only by the edges to avoid fingerprints.

nk sticks packaged until you are ready to use them.

u diagnose the problem, print the test print from the Utilities
e front panel. Always do this before calling the Customer
otline because it contains useful diagnostic information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

quick reference

	Possible Causes	Solution
	The printer is receiving, processing or printing a job.	Wait for the job to be completed or cancel the job.
	You have entered the menu in the front panel.	Exit the menu.
off	The printer is not ready, is disabled, or has detected an error.	Read the front panel message to determine the printer's status.
	The power switch on the printer is off, or the power cord is not connected.	Check that the power cord is plugged into the printer and into an active circuit; check that the power switch is set to *on*.
	The printer is stopped because it detected a user-correctable error such as an open door or a media jam.	Correct the condition reported by the front panel (e.g., close the door or clear the media jam).
	Error occurred that is not user-correctable.	Turn the printer off and back on again. If the indicator is still on after the power-up sequence, the printer requires service. See If you need help.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

quick reference (cont'd.)

	Possible Causes	Solution
enu o vone	Front panel timeout: if no activity occurs in 5 minutes, the front panel returns to **Ready**.	Press **Menu** to enter the front panel menu.
s: Jam	Media jam.	Remove the jammed media. See Clearing a media jam.
	Media is too thick or too thin.	Use recommended media. Refer to All about media for more information.
	Using Letter-size cut-sheet media (ANSI A, ISO A4, and Arch A) or smaller.	Use media at least B-size for better feed reliability.
	Roll media is not cut evenly or smoothly.	Make sure that the cutter is sharp; use a new blade in the cutting tool for manual cutting.
s: am	An ink stick has jammed in the ink loader.	Remove the jammed ink stick. See Clearing an ink jam.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a print

Solution
Make sure that you plugged in the printer and turned it on.
Make sure that you connected the interface cable(s) properly.
Make a test print from the front panel to verify that the controller board is functional.
Verify that your computer can communicate with the printer.
Verify that your printer can communicate: **If you have a Macintosh** Make sure that you have the correct PPD file installed and selected and that you have selected the printer in the **Chooser**. If the printer's name does not appear in the **Chooser**, your LocalTalk or EtherTalk connection may be faulty. (See also Printer doesn't appear in the Chooser (Macintosh) below.) You can use the **Print Window** command to send a file to the printer without using an application. If the communication link between your computer and the printer is working, the printer produces a directory listing of the active window on the desktop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a print (cont'd.)

Solution

Verify that your printer can communicate:

If you have a PC
Type this DOS command:

echo %! > *port*

echo showpage [Ctrl-D] > *port*

Where **[CTRL-D]** indicates pressing the **D** key while holding down the **CTRL** key. Substitute the name of the printer port (for example **COM1:**, **COM2:**, **LPT1:**, **LPT2:**) for the variable *port* in this command. For example, if you are testing a parallel connection on **LPT1**, type:

echo %! > lpt1:

echo showpage [Ctrl-D] > lpt1:

If the communication link between your computer and the printer is working, the printer ejects a blank page (if media was previously loaded). If this occurs, but you cannot print from your application or through Windows, make sure that the appropriate driver is installed and that you have selected the printer correctly.

This is probably the result of a PostScript error. Enable the PostScript error handler in the printer's front panel. See Using a PostScript error handler for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a print (cont'd.)

Solution

General things to try

- Print a different file.
- Print from a different application.
- Use a different driver.
- Print from a different computer.
- Use different cabling.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a print (cont'd.)

Solution

Macintosh users

- Open the **Chooser** and select a supported driver, such as the LaserWriter 8.x, and your printer.
  If the driver isn't installed or properly set up with your printer, refer to Macintosh software for instructions.
  Make sure that **Background Printing** is turned **off**.
- If you are having trouble printing from the **Finder** in System 7.1, for example, if the Phaser 600 printer driver dialog boxes are not opening, it may be because the **Finder** doesn't have enough allocated memory. Reinstall a supported driver to automatically allocate enough memory for printing from the **Finder**.
- For PowerMacs, you should be using the latest version of **Open Transport** and the system software, available from Apple Computer.
- If you are using LaserWriter 8, throw away the *LaserWriter 8 Pref* file, located in the *Preferences* folder, inside the *System Folder*. A new preferences file will be generated.
- Use the most current version of the Macintosh operating system.
- Use the most current version of your application.
- If you prefer using background printing, but it seems to be causing problems, allocate more memory to the Print Monitor.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a print (cont'd.)

Solution

Windows users (general)

- Check to make sure that you have configured the communications ports and the Handshake option correctly. Refer to Printing the configuration page for helpful information.
- Make sure that you are using the correct cables for your computer and printer. See Ordering Interface cables and adapters for information.
- Turn off spooling/Print Manager.

Windows 3.1 users (using the Tektronix driver)

- Make sure that your printer is connected to the port you selected in the driver's **Printers/Connect** dialog box.
- Try resetting the **Transmission Retry** timeout option in the driver's **Printers/Connect** dialog box to **950** seconds.
- Check the **Options** dialog box to make sure that **Printer**, not **Encapsulated PostScript File**, is selected in the driver's **Print To** box.
- If the error message **`Windows Header has not been downloaded to the printer`** appears on your computer screen, open the driver's **Options** dialog box and turn on the **Send Header with Each Job** check box.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a print (cont'd.)

Solution

Windows 95 users

- Make sure that your printer is connected to the port you selected in the driver's **Details** tab.
- Try resetting the **Transmission Retry** timeout option in the driver's **Details** tab to **950** seconds.
- Make sure that the correct port is selected in the driver's **Details** tab.
- If the error message **`Windows Header has not been downloaded to the printer`** appears on your computer screen, click the **PostScript** tab and click one of the options for **PostScript Header**.

If you are using PC/NFS

If you have PC/NFS software installed on your computer, you need to make the following selection in the **Network Options** dialog box:

1. From the **Main** window, double-click the **Print Manager** icon.
2. From the **Options** menu in the **Print Manager**, select **Network Settings**.
3. In the **Network Options** dialog box, uncheck the **Print Net Jobs Direct** box.
4. Click **OK**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a print (cont'd.)

Solution

Using the PS Error Handler

Follow these steps to use the PostScript Error Handler, after trying the previous suggestions:

1. Set the PS Error Handler to *on* in the front panel's Printer Defaults menu.
2. Use the error handler utility to determine what is wrong. Refer to Using a PostScript error handler for information on using the error handler.

Windows 3.1

1. Double-click the **Printers** icon in the **Control Panel**.
2. In the **Printers** dialog box, choose your printer from the list of installed printers.
3. Click the **Connect** button; the **Connect** dialog box appears.
4. Change your port connection from **LPT*x*** to **LPT*x*.DOS** (where *x* is 1, 2, or 3).
5. Click **OK**.

Refer to Fixing timeout problems in Windows for instructions on fixing timeout problems in Windows.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a print (cont'd.)

Solution

Windows 95

1. Select **Start** in the taskbar on your screen.
2. In the menu that appears, select **Settings**.
3. In the next menu, select **Printers**; the **Printers** window appears.
4. Click on your printer's icon and select **Properties** from the **File** menu.
5. Click the **Details** tab.
6. Click **Add Port**.
7. Click **Other**.
8. Make sure that **Local Port** is highlighted, then click **OK**.
9. Type **LPTx.DOS** (where **x** is 1, 2, or 3).
10. Click **OK**.
11. In the **Details** tab, the *Print to the following port* should be **LPT.DOS** (unknown local port).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a print (cont'd.)

Solution

Check the printer's language mode

1. Print a copy of the printer's configuration page to see the language mode on each port. Refer to Printing the configuration page.
2. If the printer port you are using has the wrong language set for the type of application you are using, send one of the following utility files to the printer:

- To print PostScript files, use the *PSCRIPT.PS* file to set up a port to receive PostScript; see Printing PostScript files or World Wide Web for details.
- To print HP-GL files, use the *HPGL.PS* file to set up a port to receive HP-GL; see Printing HP-GL files or World Wide Web for details.
- To print PostScript or HP-GL files, use the AIS.PS file to set up a port for automatic language selection; see Enabling automatic language selection or World Wide Web.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a print (cont'd.)

Solution
Try another network connection.
Try printing from another computer.
Make sure that the printer is turned on and the cables are correctly attached.
Check the termination (refer to the documentation for your network adapter or connector for information on termination).
If you have changed the printer's name, make sure that you have given it a unique name (not the same as any other printer in the zone or on the network).
Make sure that the correct network zone is selected in either the **Network Control Panel** or the **AppleTalk Control Panel** in System 7.5.3 or later.
For network-connected printers: Problems may occur when double-spooling occurs or banner pages are specified. Refer to Tektronix' on-line documentation or contact your network administrator for more help on troubleshooting your specific type of network.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a print (cont'd.)

Solution

If you are using the serial or parallel port from a PC, make sure that you used the **MODE** command to set the PC's communication parameters. For example:

MODE LPT1:,,P > NUL

MODE COM1:9600,N,8,1,P

The **P** parameter in these commands sets the port timeout to **Infinite Retry** and must be part of the command.

If you are using Windows 3.1 or Windows 95, make sure that the **Transmission Retry** value for the printer's assigned port is set to **950**. For more information, see Printing from a PC then select your driver.

The **Error** indicator blinks with any hard error, such as media jam or door open.

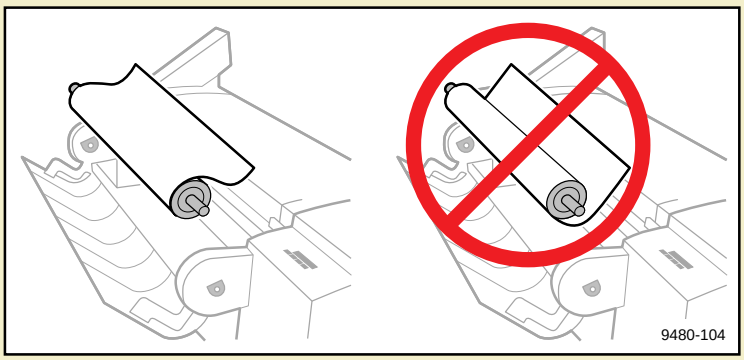
Look at the front panel for an indication of the type of error, then correct the problem. If the front panel message is `Service Required/Fault Code:xx`, make note of the fault code number, then turn the printer off and on again. If the **Error** indicator remains on after power-up, your printer requires service. See If you need help for telephone information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Solution

Make sure that the fixed end of the paper roll holder (the side *without* the removable plastic nut) is installed at the side closest to the front panel.

Make sure that the media is installed so that it loads over the top of the roll, as shown.



Make sure that the leading edge of a media roll is cut evenly (corners are 90˚) and smoothly before feeding it into the printer; refer to the illustration. For instructions on getting the best cut on the media roll, refer to Cutting roll media.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

cont'd.)

Solution
When you feed the media into the printer, do the following: ■ Align the media with the guide on the printer, so that it feeds evenly and straight. ■ As you feed the media into the printer, insert it until it stops against the feed rollers, making sure it touches all rollers at once.
Clean the printer's rollers and drum. See Feed rollers and paper guides for instructions.
To optimize the printer's wide-format design, use cut-sheet media at least B-size and/or roll media at least 16.5 inches wide for better feed reliability.
Open the top cover and exit cover to check the paper path for any obstruction.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

cont'd.)

Solution

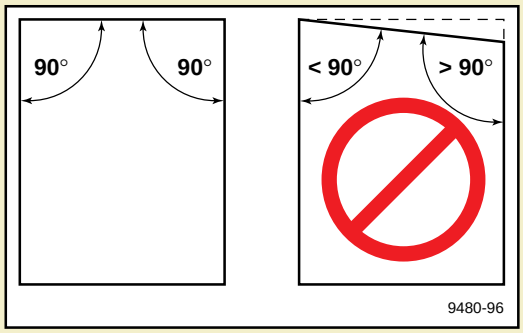
Make sure that the fixed end of the paper roll holder (the side *without* the removable plastic nut) is installed at the side closest to the front panel.

Make sure that the media is installed so that it loads over the top of the roll. Refer to the drawing on the previous page.

Make sure that the media is fed into the printer evenly.

To optimize the printer's wide-format design, use cut-sheet media at least B-size and/or roll media at least 16.5 inches wide for better feed reliability.

Make sure that the leading edge of the media roll is cut evenly (corners are 90˚) and smoothly. Refer to the illustration below. If your media is not cut evenly, follow the instructions on Cutting roll media.



Clean the Drum, Feed rollers and paper guides, and Clamp rollers.

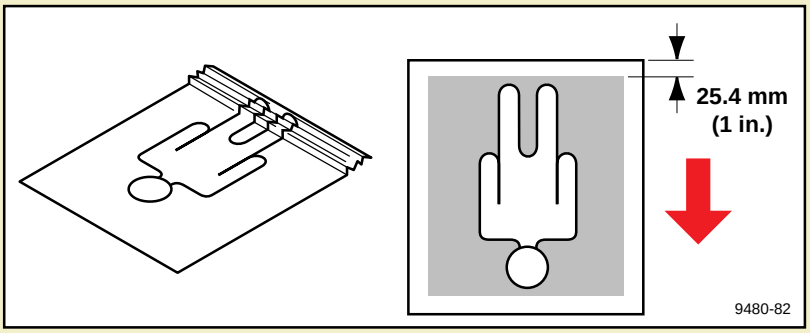
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

cont'd.)

Solution

Check media thickness; media that is too thin will wrinkle.

Reduce the image so that ink placement and fusing complete at least 25 mm (1 inch) from the trailing edge of the media.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

age size and position

	Solution
	Check your application for image sizing.
	Make sure that you are using a printer PPD file and have selected the correct page size. If you select the incorrect page size, the image may be cut off.
	Make sure that the media selected in the driver is the same as or smaller than the media installed.
	If you selected **Page Centering** in the driver, make sure that media is loaded *before* you send the print job; otherwise, the default media setting calculates the centering position.
ect	Make sure that you have installed the printer driver or the correct PPD file onto your Macintosh so that you can select the correct page sizes from the driver. For details on how to print from a Macintosh, refer to Printing from a Macintosh.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

lems

	Solution
	Clean or replace the fuser wheel.
	To save your print, as well as the cost and time of having to resend the job: ■ If the ink dots appear in the white space on your print, use an eraser to carefully remove the ink.
ded	Check the selected color correction mode.
	Clean the printhead from the front panel Utilities menu. Refer to Cleaning the printhead.
	Make sure that **Media Fusing** is turned on and try setting it to **Cold**.
	Clean the Clamp rollers.
	Clean the Back tension blade and paper clamp.
	Clean the paper clamp (Clamp rollers).
	Clean the exit rollers (Fuser shuttle and exit rollers).
	Clean the fuser wheel or replace the Fuser Kit components (Removing the fuser components).
	Clean the Feed rollers and paper guides.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

lems (cont'd.)

	Solution
olor	**If you have a Macintosh** Make sure that you are using the correct PPD file with the latest Apple LaserWriter printer driver (version 6.0.7 or higher), which supports color PostScript. Make sure that **Color/Grayscale** is selected in the **Print** dialog box. Some applications require special files to print in color. Make sure that these files are properly installed. For information, refer to Printing from a Macintosh or through the Tektronix World Wide Web page. Make sure that you have not selected **Monochrome** in the **TekColor Options** dialog box. **If you have a PC** Be sure to use a driver that supports color PostScript. If you are using Windows 3.1, use the Phaser 600 printer driver. If you are using Windows, make sure that the **Color** box in the **Options** dialog box is checked. For information on the drivers, refer to Printing from a PC or through the Tektronix World Wide Web page. Make sure that you have not selected **Monochrome** in the **Tektronix Printer Features** dialog box. If you are not using a driver, make sure that you have not downloaded the monochrome mode selection code; make sure that the front panel is not set for **Monochrome**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

hints

ints

about using specific software applications with your printer, contact
r EuroHAL information systems. In the U.S., call **1-800-835-6100** or
for EuroHAL telephone numbers, refer to If you need help. For a
of available topics, request a catalog.

pplies and software

ronix supplies to ensure the highest quality prints and printer
ektronix Printer Description Files (PPDs) and utility files work with the
e the best access to printer features. See Ordering Information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

argest printed picture

st printed picture, keep in mind the following:

f media that the printer prints on is smaller than the size of the
er to Margins and print area for more details). You may have to
margins in your application software.

t predefined page size is Arch. E (36 x 48 in.), but the printer
p to 36 in. x 150 ft. (914 mm x 45.7 m).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

g print speed

ent ways to improve print speed, such as by upgrading to EtherTalk
to Novell on a PC, or to TCP/IP on a workstation. For more
uest a document catalog from HAL or EuroHAL, the Tektronix
ystems. Refer to If you need help for instructions on using these

owing topics for more information:

rt speed

nt time

mapped images

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rt speed

ken Ring are the fastest ports, followed by the parallel port, the
hen the serial port.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nt time

me depends on the following:

nplexity

rt used and network traffic

emory configuration

y mode

ode

moothing is activated

non-resident fonts used

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ts, only the time contributed by the printer's paper-marking speed
s the printer to put the ink on the paper once it has received the
e) is predictable; the others can vary greatly depending on your
ation and the type of image you are printing. However, the printer
ipt interpreter combines very fast image processing and
with sophisticated memory management to keep the total print time

imum image processing throughput via a dedicated Ethernet
bout 200 Kbytes per second. Actual throughput will generally be
er than this, depending on network traffic, image complexity, color
memory configuration. For details on the printer's paper-marking
cifications.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

mapped images

nt a document with bitmapped images, but are dissatisfied with the tput, here are some suggestions.

owing topics for more information:

users

.1 users (using the Tektronix driver)

5 users

station users

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

use any color correction option (other than **None**), your printer onger to process bitmapped images. Select color corrections upported drivers, with downloadable utility files, or from the ont panel; see Color corrections for instructions.

ard print quality option prints faster than **Enhanced**. Select y modes from the supported drivers, with downloadable utility m the printer's front panel. See Print quality modes for details on uality modes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

sers

using Adobe Photoshop, you can print using the Tektronix
t plug-in to improve the image data transfer time from your
to the printer. For instructions on installing and using the
fer to Using the PhaserPrint™ Plug-in for Photoshop and World
topics.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

users (using the Tektronix driver)

ontrol Panel, double-click **Printers**.

Tektronix Phaser 600 printer in the **Printers** dialog box.

e Print Manager in the **Printers** dialog box. Printing via the **Print** s slower, but turning it off ties up the PC longer.

rinters dialog box, click **Setup**.

etup dialog box, click **Options**.

ptions dialog box, click **Advanced**.

that the **Use PostScript Level 2 Features** check box in the **Options** dialog box is turned on.

application, choose the **Tektronix Phaser 600** as your printer.

the document again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

users

tart icon in the taskbar on your screen; a menu appears.

ursor over **Settings**; another menu appears.

u, click **Printers**; the **Printers** window appears.

ters window, select the **Phaser 600** printer icon, then select
from the **File** menu.

ostScript tab, then click the **Advanced** button.

PostScript Level 2 features.

hen finished.

the document again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ation users

rs can use the PhaserPrint software for UNIX to increase printer
en printing bitmapped images. Refer to Printing from UNIX
details.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

pt printing errors

on on specific applications, request a document catalog from HAL or e Tektronix automated fax systems. Refer to If you need help for on using these systems.

ports a PostScript error when printing from Adobe PageMaker, d, QuarkXPress, or Canvas, you may be using an older or incorrect inter description file. Refer to Software installation for instructions on description files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

always use the most current printer description file. To determine the file you are using, do the following:

osh users:

highlight) a printer description file and choose **Get Info** from the enu. Make a note of the version date.

ws 3.1 users:

a printer description file's creation date in the **File Manager.** note of the version date.

ws 95 users:

a printer description file's creation date in the **Windows er.** Make a note of the version date.

ronix' World Wide Web site or the Tektronix Bulletin Board Service e if the printer description files you have are the most recent. Refer ed help for instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

stScript error handler

ng utility, enabled in the Printer Defaults menu of the printer's front
or diagnosing problems when a job doesn't print. It provides a
handling function to help determine the cause of some PostScript
s. PostScript errors are printed on a page with other status
n an error occurs. This utility can be useful to programmers and
rt for debugging PostScript code.

handler on, click on one of these topics:

rror handler from the front panel

Macintosh error handler utility file

PC and workstation error handler utility file

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

or handler from the front panel

er's front panel, press the **Menu** button.

ght or left arrow button until the front panel displays this message:

```
Printer Defaults
<---    --->     Menu
```

u.

eft arrow button; this message appears:

```
PS Error Handler
<---    --->     Menu
```

u. This message appears:

```
PS Error Handler: Off *
<---    --->     Select
```

cates the current selection; *off* is the factory default.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rrow button. The front panel displays this message;

```
PS Error Handler: On
<---    --->     Select
```

ect.

button until the front panel reads **Ready**.

the error handler, resend the print job; the printer produces an error

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

acintosh error handler utility file

ing QuickDraw GX and System Software 7.5, you can download printer
the Tektronix Phaser 600 GX printer driver; refer to Downloading printer
orld Wide Web topics for instructions.

nstructions in Macintosh software to install the utility files from the
CD-ROM.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility or *the Apple Printer Utility* in the *PhaserTools*
our hard disk, and double-click its icon to start the application.

wnload PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

Tek Error Handler file from the list, then click **Open**. (This file was
the *Phaser 600 Utilities* folder, inside the *PhaserTools* folder.)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

npt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file name
printer output. Use either the default name given in the edit box or
name. Click **Save** to send the file to the printer.

t is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a dialog
OK to continue.

e file to get information from the PostScript error handler.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

C and workstation error handler utility file

nstructions in PC/Windows software to install the utility files from Phaser 600 CD-ROM or the Printer Software for Windows diskette.

installed files in the *PHSR600* subdirectory, inside the *PHSRTOOL* n your hard disk.

EKEHAND.PS file to the printer using one of the following methods:

ers: Use the DOS **COPY** command, or the **Copy** command in ws 3.1 **File Manager**, to send the file to the printer. See ading files from a PC or World Wide Web topics for instructions.

tation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

out problems in Windows

llowing procedures to correct Windows timeout problems. If a dure doesn't work for you, try the DOS procedure.

owing topics for more information:

ows 3.1

ows 95

(and Windows 3.1)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

vs 3.1

Control Panel from the **Main** menu.

ck the **Printers** icon to open the **Printers** dialog box.

onnect button to open the **Connect** dialog box.

e **Transmission Retry** to **950** seconds by typing in the new

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

vs 95

tart icon in the taskbar on your screen; a menu appears.

ursor over **Settings**; another menu appears.

u, click **Printers**; the **Printers** window appears.

ters window, select the **Phaser 600** printer icon, then select
from the **File** menu.

etails tab and increase the **Transmission Retry** to **950** seconds by
e new number.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nd Windows 3.1)

rocedure, the printer must be connected directly to your computer, not
.

prompt, issue the DOS **MODE** command by typing the following:

```
MODE LPT1:,,P
```

ows 3.1.

Control Panel from the **Main** menu.

ck the **Printers** icon to open the **Printers** dialog box.

onnect button to open the **Connect** dialog box.

e port selection from **LPT1** to either **LPT1.DOS** or **LPT1.OS2,**
on the options you see in the dialog box.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

olors are not what you expected

ther **Color Correction** option in a supported driver and print
e again; refer to Color corrections for more information on color

not using a supported driver and are sharing the printer with
s on a network, another user may have changed the printer's
stment setting. Refer to Sharing the printer on a network for more
n on sharing a network printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the driver's **Use Printer Setting** option and printed colors are
ou expected, check the following:

tion may have been made in the **TekColor Correction** menu on
ter's front panel. These settings change the printer's color
ion setting.

correction utility file may have been downloaded to the printer.
iles change the printer's color correction setting.

o Sharing the printer on a network for details on how these
s affect prints made from a driver.

Match provides the ability to customize the TekColor corrections.
o PhaserMatch for more information on the PhaserMatch custom
rofiles.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NTONE Colors

inter-specific PANTONE Colors are not printing as expected, Make e printing without any color corrections selected. Refer to Using or Files for more information.

stions about PANTONE Color Matching, refer to the HAL article on s. Refer to Using the automated fax systems for information on using roHAL fax systems.

variables in process reproduction of colors generated by the Phaser one of which may affect the quality of the PANTONE Color ding:

used

edia used

nal resolution

ure/halftones

de

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

look too purple

olors look too purple, print your document with the **Vivid Color** color
r to Color corrections and Deciding which color correction to use for
more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ektronix halftone screens

e screens are designed for Tektronix printers, and improve print
lication-set halftone screens. The *Setscreen Off (SCRENOFF.PS)*
es some PostScript operators, such as the *setscreen*,
and *sethalftone*. When downloaded to the printer, this file prevents
m overriding the Tektronix proprietary halftone screens.

owing topics for more information:

Macintosh Setscreen utility file

PC/workstation Setscreen utility file

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

acintosh Setscreen utility file

ing QuickDraw GX and System Software 7.5, you can download printer
the Tektronix Phaser 600 GX printer driver; refer to Downloading printer
e World Wide Web for instructions.

nstructions in Macintosh software to install the utility files from
Phaser 600 CD-ROM or the Printer Software for Macintosh diskette.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk, and
k its icon to start the application.

ownload PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

of the following files from the list, then click **Open**. (These files
ed in the *Phaser 600 Utilities* folder, inside the *PhaserTools* folder.)

Setscreen On to enable setscreen operations.

Setscreen Off to disable setscreen operations.

npt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file name
printer output. Use either the default name given in the edit box or
name.

to send the file to the printer.

t is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a dialog
OK to continue.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

C/workstation Setscreen utility file

nstructions in PC/Windows software to install the utility files from Phaser 600 CD-ROM or the Printer Software for Windows diskette.

installed files in the *PHSR600* subdirectory, inside the *PHSRTOOL* n your hard disk.

the following files:

SCREENON.PS to enable setscreen operations.

SCRENOFF.PS to disable setscreen operations.

the following methods to send a file to the printer:

ers: Use the DOS **COPY** command, or the **Copy** command in ws 3.1 **File Manager**, to send the file to the printer.

tation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

page sizes in Windows applications

s applications, you can select printer page sizes in a **Print Setup** ssed from the **File** menu. If you use a **Print Setup** dialog box to r 600 printer from your application, some page sizes may not be .

0 printer page size you want to use is not visible in the list, do the

.1

5

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ain window, open the **Control Panel** and double-click the **Printers**

ters dialog box, select **Phaser 600** in the list of printers.

etup button.

p dialog box, select the page size you want and click **OK**.

our application. If you open the **Print Setup** dialog box again from application, the page size selection may be blank. The page size ected in the driver is still selected, it is just not visible in the list.

ual.

he **Print Setup** dialog box from within an application, and the page size blank, the blank represents the page size last selected from the printer gh the **Control Panel**. You can leave the page size selection blank and al, or you can select a page size from the list.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tart icon in the taskbar on your screen; a menu appears.

ursor over **Settings**; another menu appears.

u, click **Printers**; the **Printers** window appears.

ters window, select the **Phaser 600** printer icon, then select
from the **File** menu.

aper tab.

page size, and click **OK**.

our application.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nting incorrectly from Windows

ng incorrectly from Windows, make sure that you installed the
ith the supported driver.

e the standard printer configuration, you should have installed
Phaser 600.

e the printer's Extended Features option with the additional fonts,
have installed **Tektronix Phaser 600 with Extended Features**
ndows recognizes and uses all the printer's fonts.

Tektronix Phaser 600 with Extended Features and you have only the
nter configuration with 17 fonts, any of the additional fonts selected
plication are printed in the Courier typeface.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

er configuration information

re which printer configuration you have, press and hold down the printer's front panel for configuration and amount of memory. Printer ears on the lower line of the display.

rd configuration (17 fonts), the display reads:

Config: Standard 8/24/40MB.

ended Features configuration (39 fonts), the display reads:

Config: Extended 8/24/40MB.

nt a copy of the printer's startup page. Refer to Printing the startup ions.

dows software for complete instructions on installing the printer and

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

he printer on a network

files, and front panel interactions

00 printer is shared by other users on a network, you can affect other users when you use the downloadable utility files or the nel to change the printer's default color correction setting.

print from a supported driver with any TekColor color correction *except* **Use Printer Setting**, the driver selection *overrides* the elections *for prints made from the driver*:

correction utility file, if one has been downloaded to the printer.

ection on the printer's front panel **`TekColor Corrections`**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

print from a supported driver with the **Use Printer Setting**
ur images are printed with one of the following selections:

correction utility file, if one has been downloaded to the printer.

ection on the printer's front panel **TekColor Corrections**

print from a non-supported driver, your images can be printed
the following selections:

correction utility file, if one has been downloaded to the printer.

ection on the printer's front panel **TekColor Corrections**

s on your prints are not what you expected, and your system
tor has disabled some of the printer's front panel menus, ask
gs are in effect and whether a color correction utility file has
nloaded to the printer. You can also print a configuration page
current color correction selection; see Printing the configuration
structions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Writer Utility does not work (AppleTalk)

Utility cannot be used if the printer is connected to a print server.
administrator to temporarily remove the printer from the print server
of the PostScript utility files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nts and tips

that the media is dust-free. Dust and dirt can result in poor print

edia with both hands at the edges to avoid creases and
s.

a in the original, dust-free package in the same environmental
as the printer.

grade media. For best reliability and image-quality, always use
nedia. Tektronix printers and Tektronix supplies are Made For
r™. Refer to Ordering Information for ordering information.

nedia rolls have a three-inch core. If you are using a media roll
inch core, adjust the endcaps on the paper roll holder. Refer to
nch core media roll: removing the core adapter for instructions.

edia through the printer twice or printing on both sides of the
reduce the life of the printer's paper path components and may
quent cleaning.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

using non-Tektronix media rolls, take care that you stop printing
media runs out: if the media is taped securely to the core, the
nravel, feed into and damage the printhead.

ing a media roll onto the paper roll holder, take care that you **do**
he roll onto the holder. The weight of the roll can dislodge the
ap on the holder; if this happens, media will not feed correctly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

media

misfeeds because of a jagged or crooked leading edge, follow

e cutter if the media's leading edge is jagged (see Removing the onents for instructions).

that the knife you use for manual cutting has a new, sharp

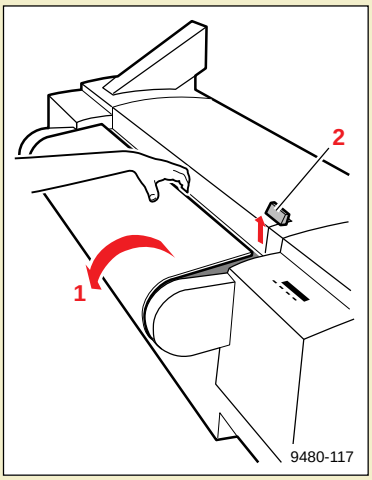
using very thick media, such as canvas or fabric, cut it manually tting tool provided with the printer, rather than use the automatic

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

that the leading edge of the roll media is
e angles on the corners of the leading
ld be 90˚). If it is not, follow these steps:

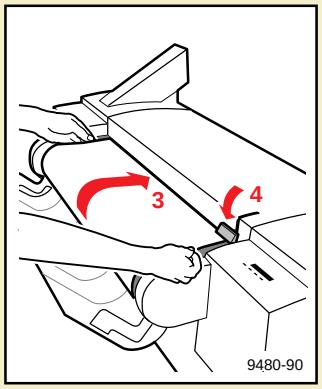
he paper roll cover.

atch on the top cover (make sure that you
e cover closed).



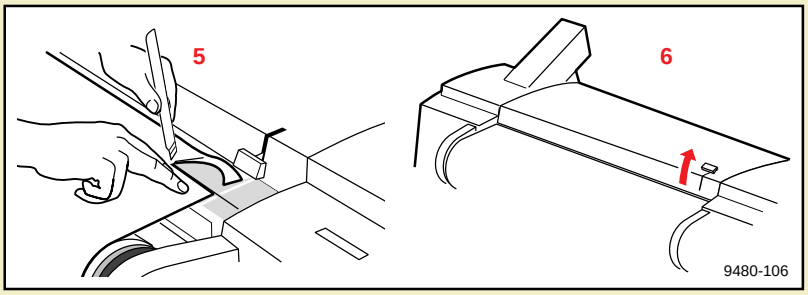
he roll media under the top cover. Align the
with the guide on the printer to make sure
inserted evenly.

he top cover latch to secure the media.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e paper roll
pen, use a
nife (such as
ing tool
d with the
to trim the
Use the
s cutting guide
e a clean cut.

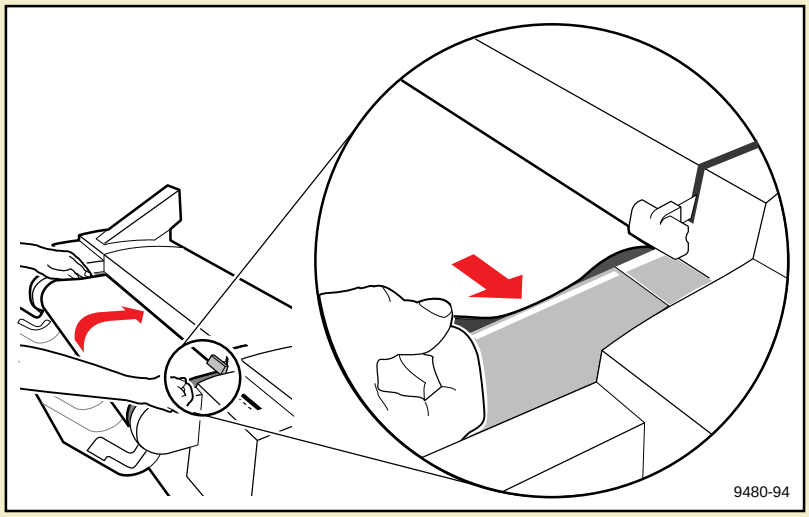


top cover's latch; remove and discard the cut strip of media.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

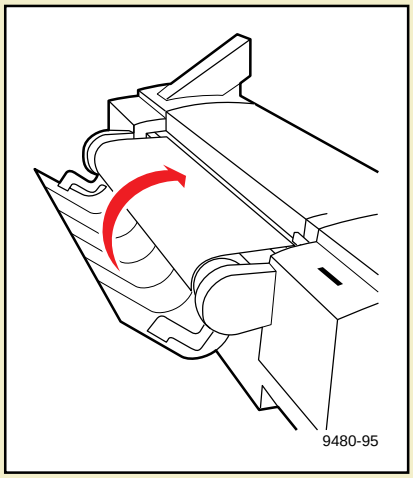
own on the top cover latch to lock it.

the media by
es, feed it into
ter evenly until it
Make sure that
n the right side
edia with the
n the printer.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

he printer grabs the media and advances
the paper roll cover.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ch core media roll: removing the core adapter

a media roll with a 2-inch core, you must first adjust the endcaps
apters) to accommodate the smaller core size.

pty paper roll holder:

is out of the printer.

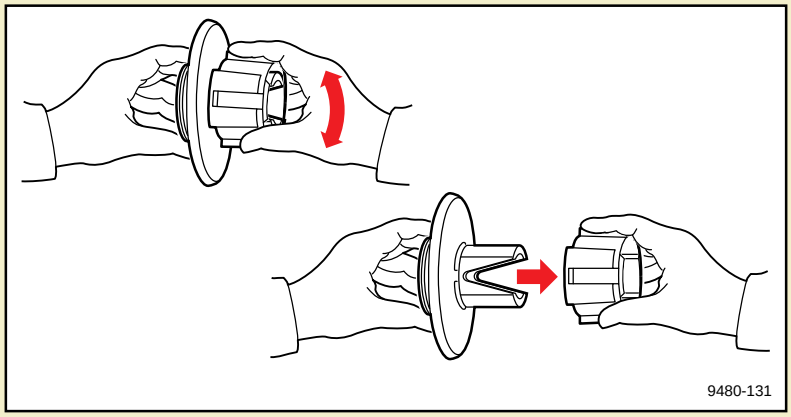
able endcap is removed.

roll is removed from the holder.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ndcap:

e adapter and
nly, rock the
ck and forth to
nd pull it off the



edia roll as you
nally:

e media roll onto
ft, so that the fixed endcap fits inside the core of the media roll.

e the removable endcap.

both 2-inch and 3-inch core media rolls, order an extra paper roll
Ordering Information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e core adapter

pty paper roll holder:

is out of the printer.

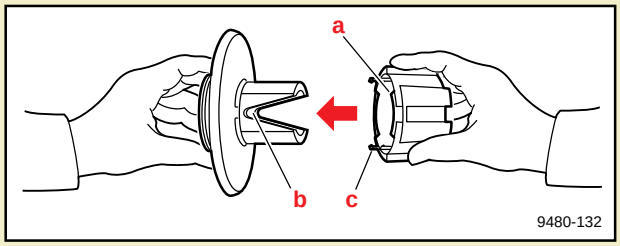
able endcap is removed.

roll is removed from the holder.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ndcap:

bs (a) on the inside of the
h the “V”-shaped openings
ndcap’s core. The 4 teeth (**c**)
ter fit over the endcap’s core.
dapter onto the endcap and
t snaps into place.



edia roll as you would normally:

e media roll onto the shaft, so that the fixed endcap fits inside
e of the media roll.

e the removable endcap.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ge prints even though it is disabled

wer-up self-test can detect problems that do not necessarily make letely inoperable. Examples of these *non-fatal* errors include faulty d some memory failures.

ects a non-fatal error at power-up, the startup page prints, even if ed it. In this case, the page contains one or more of the error in the following table. Depending on your needs, you may not service immediately.

	Description
	The named port is not working. The other ports can still be used.
ed	One of the memory SIMMs is not working. In this message, *x* indicates the number of the SIMM that failed. Since the printer's base memory is still working, the printer can still be used, but throughput may suffer.
s SIMM	The Extended Features SIMM is not working. The printer can be used, but no access to Print Preview, Reprint, and Copystation; no access to the 22 extra fonts. The base fonts are still available, but requests for the optional fonts will be replaced with `Courier`.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a media jam

has frequent media jams, clean the printer regularly; see Caring for Your

ccurs, the front panel reports **`Clear <Location> Jam`**. These are
dia jams that can occur:

m

am

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

am, clearing it consists of these basic steps (for complete
er to Clearing a media jam):

dia, if necessary (roll media).

op cover and use a pen to move the printhead to the far right.

xit cover and move the fuser to the side.

e jammed media from either the exit or top paper path.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

not loaded and the front panel reports a media jam, open the and close it again to clear the error message.

jammed media extends from the exit path, remove it from that th a downward movement. Pulling media in the same direction er path leaves less residue inside the printer than backing of the printer from the drum area.

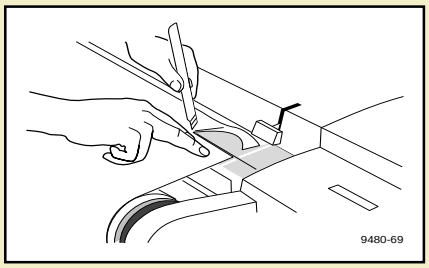
ving the jammed media, inspect the inside of the printer for es of media and remove them.

er frequently reports **`Clear Entrance Jam`**, make sure that a cuts are smooth and that you insert the media evenly; see media.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

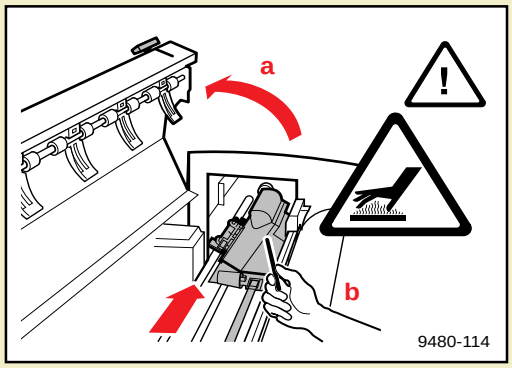
media jam

edia if you are using roll media. If Step 2.



aper roll cover open, use a sharp knife
ne cutting tool included with the printer)
jammed media. Use the printer's
de to make a clean cut.

printhead.



ne top cover.

an object such as a pen, move the
thead to the far right. If you do not
you might damage the printhead
ou remove the media.

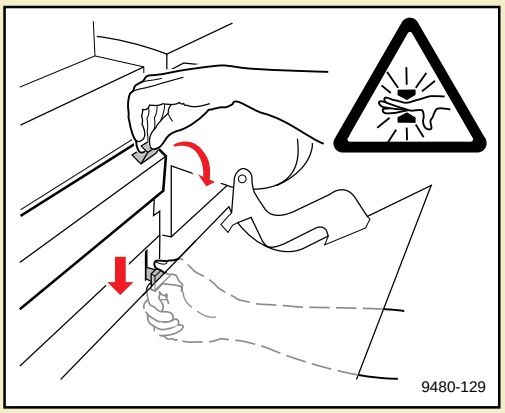
N G

d is hot. To avoid injury, do not use your hand to move the printhead.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

fuser.

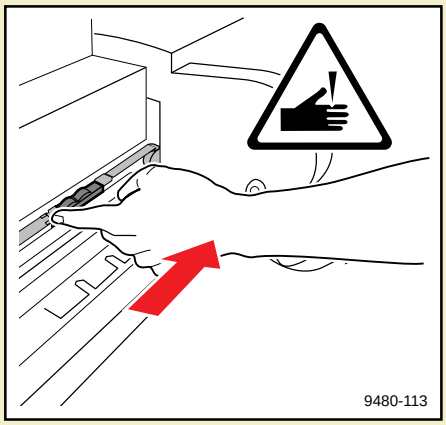
ne exit cover.



N G

ng the exit cover, be careful not to
and between the paper roll cover
cover.

ne fuser to the far right or left side of
ter.



s the fuser and releases tension between
eel and the media; it also moves the cutter
ne jammed media.

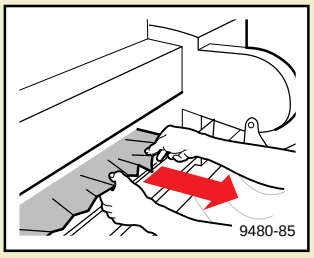
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ne jammed media. For all types of media jams, always inspect nd rollers for any loose paper and remove it.

OR

If paper does not extend outside the exit cover:

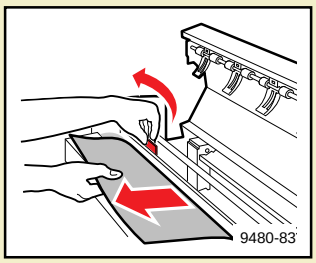
- With the exit cover open, remove the jammed media.



OR

If paper is only visible inside the top cover:

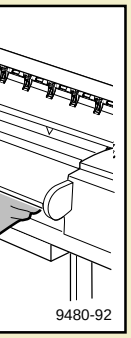
- Pull the back tension blade's handle toward you and hold it in that position; this lifts the blade away from the drum and releases the jammed media.
- Remove the media by pulling it out of the printer.



***outside* the**

over.

nly pull the exit path.



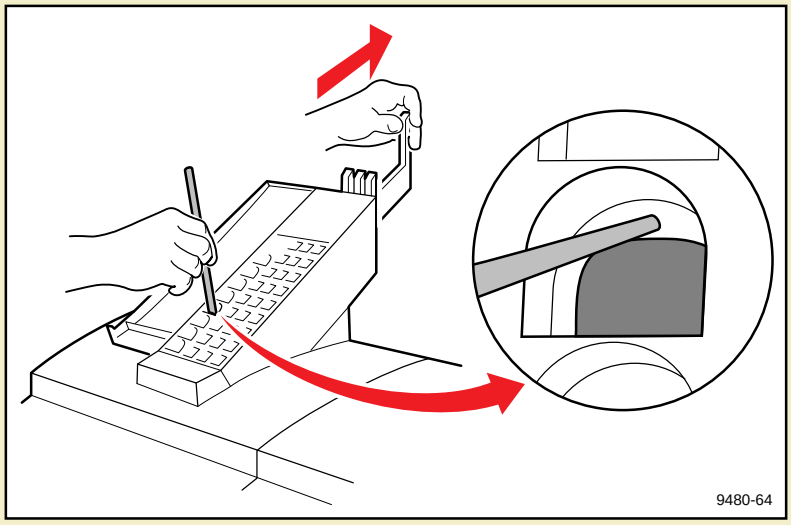
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

an ink jam

k falls over in the loader

or pen-like
nsert into the
nd rotate the ink
e “up” position.

trouble reaching
k, you can raise
or slide the
p for better

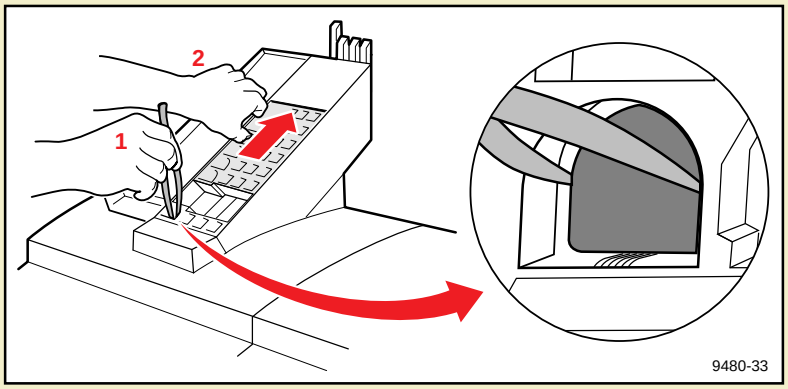


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

k doesn't drop completely

ers to lift the ink
the printhead *or*
or pen-like object
ink stick into the

trouble reaching
, you can slide
e up for better



N

ink loader may be out of position after an ink jam. Do not try to reposition
damage the ink loader. The belt resets to the correct position when the
k is loaded.

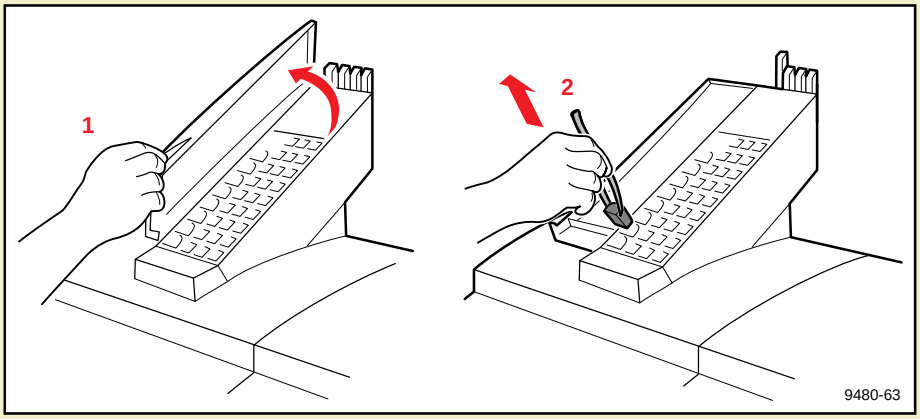
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e ink loader

e to clear an ink jam with the procedures If an ink stick falls over in the ink stick doesn't drop completely, you can remove the ink loader:

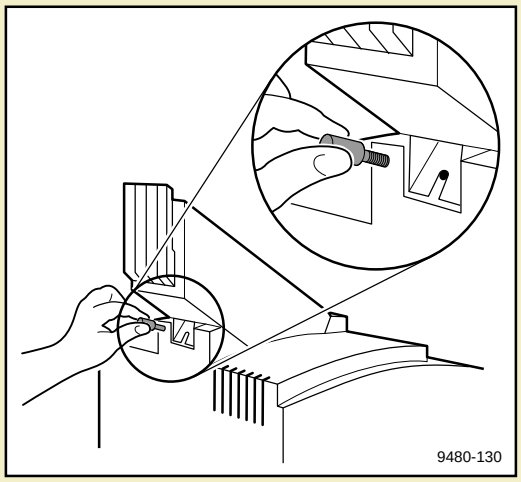
nk loader

hands or
emove all
tom ink
the loader.
sticks
ter use.
over.

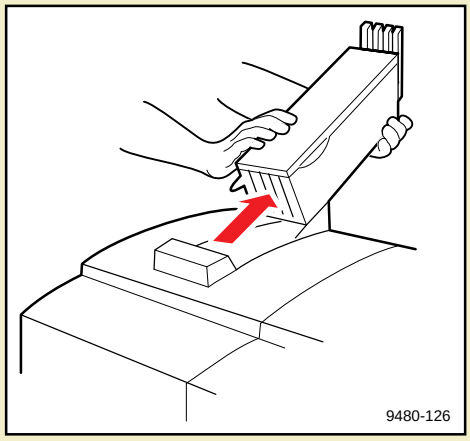


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

e screw that holds the ink loader to

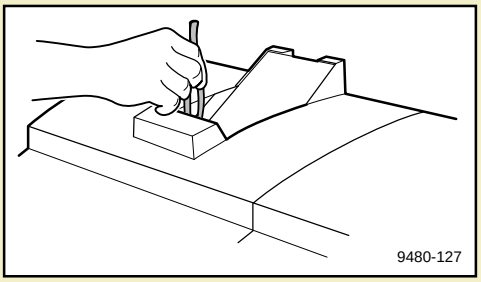


k loader out of the printer.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

k loader out of the way, use tweezers
he remaining ink sticks from inside



ne ink loader and load the ink.

nter off and back on again. After the
alizes and warms up, the front panel
eady.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USING THE FRONT PANEL

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

several Help Pages that you can print to learn more er.

owing topics for more information:

s overview

e front panel menu map

e configuration page

e startup page

nd disabling the startup page

nd disabling front panel menus

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nel

owing topics for details on parts of the front panel:

overview

indicators

buttons

splay

rmation

menu map

u

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

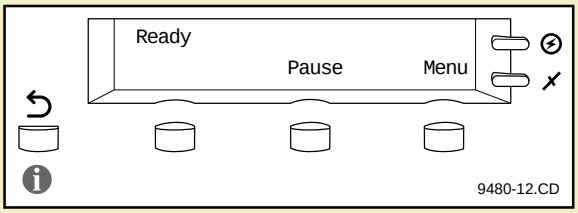
overview

provides information with these features:

tor lights

ns

of two lines of 24-characters each for messages, button (action)
er-adjustable parameter settings, and printer information.



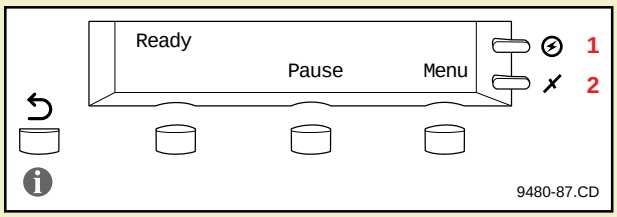
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

indicators

ncludes these indicator

(green LED)

(red LED)

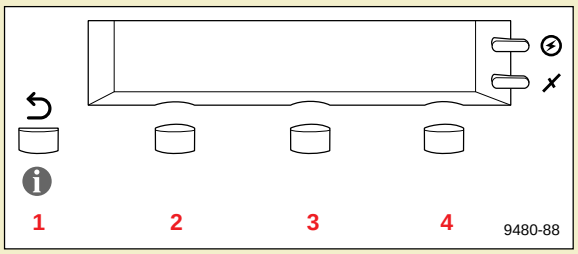


	Blinking	Off
rinter and for tion.	■ The printer is processing or printing an image. ■ The printer is in interactive mode: you have pressed the **Menu** button. ■ The printer is performing a function, such as warm-up or cleaning, that requires no user interaction.	The printer is not ready, or there is an error.
	■ If the **Power** indicator is lighted, the printer requires immediate user interaction (for example, clear a media jam or close an open door). Check the front panel message. ■ If the **Power** indicator is not lighted, the printer detects a hardware error.	Normal operation: there are no print engine or controller board errors.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

buttons

buttons function according
de) the printer is in.



Front Panel Buttons

1	2	3	4
rovides printer formation when ressed and held own. Refer to rinter information.	**Cancel** Cancels a job that is printing or processing.	**Pause** Accesses the Pause menu.	**Menu** Accesses the front panel menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Front Panel Buttons

1	2	3	4
acks up a level of e menu without aking a selection.	**<---** Scrolls backward through the available selections.	**--->** Scrolls forward through the available selection.	**Menu** Accesses front panel sub-menus.
xits the menu and turns the printer to eady.		**Confirm** Implements a selection.	**Print** Executes a print command.
			Select Accepts the selected value.
			View Allows the user to view information.
acks up a level of e menu without aking a selection.	**Reprint** Accesses the Reprint selections.	**Feed** Advances the media.	**Cut** Cuts the media.
xits the menu and turns the printer to eady.			

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

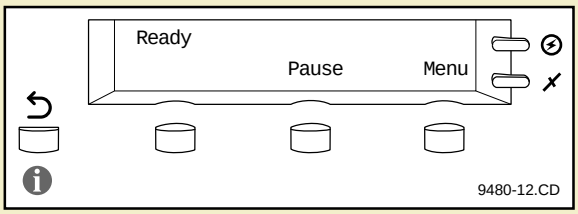
Front Panel Buttons

1	2	3	4
rovides printer formation when ressed and held own. Refer to rinter information.	**Cancel** Cancels the current print preview job.	**Pause** Accesses the Pause menu, to print the reduced image at a different scale.	**Print** Prints the current job being previewed.
	Wake Up Pressing any key activates the warm-up process, eventually bringing the printer to the **Ready** state.		

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

splay

the display have the following



tatus messages such as
Printing.

peration errors and warnings such as **Ink Loader Low**.

ne names of menus and parameters you can set.

ve mode, displays button labels such as **<---** for *previous* and
ext (for moving through selections in a given menu), **Menu** for
a menu of selections, and **Print** and **Select** to make

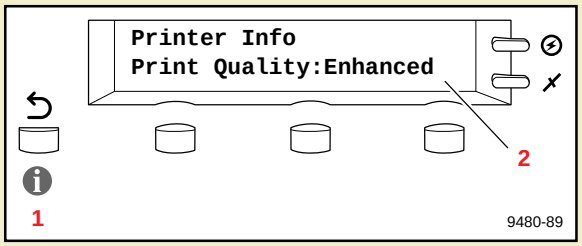
perating mode, displays printer information when the ⓘ button
and held down.

o the front panel menu selections, turn to Front panel menu map.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rmation

on the front panel (**1**) allows
e following information from
ent settings; this information
ower line of the front panel



me: The name assigned to the printer by the system
tor.

: Current print job or front panel setting for media size.

ty: Current print job or front panel setting for Print Quality
, **Enhanced**).

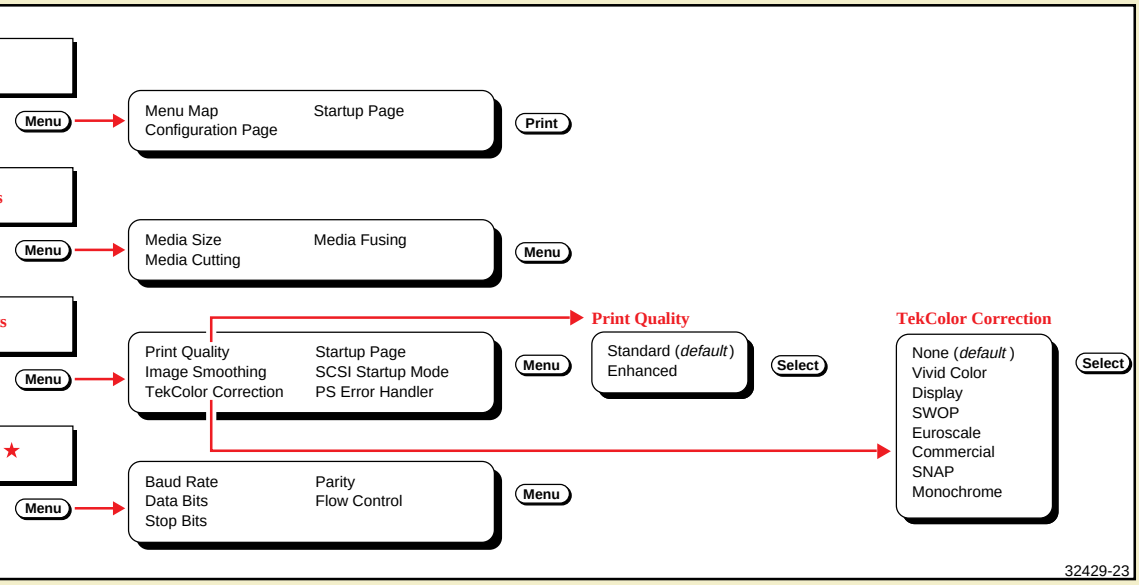
urrent print job or front panel setting for media fusing
, **None**).

urrent print job or front panel setting for media cutting
Per Job, **Off**)

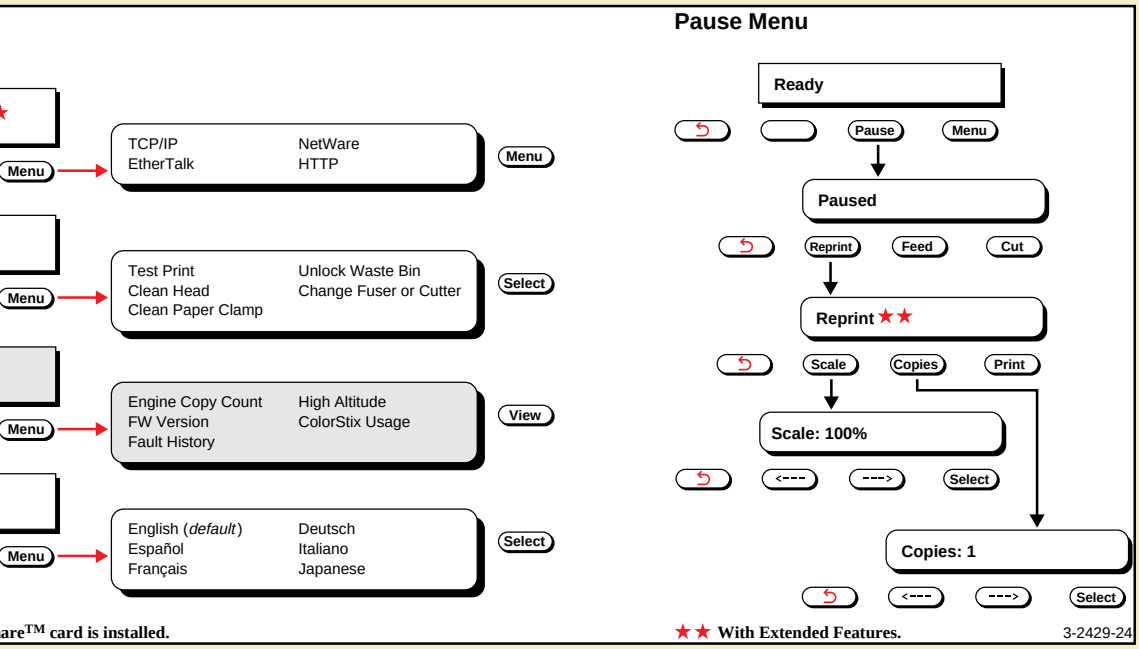
ion: Standard or Extended Features; amount of installed RAM
, Standard; **8MB, 24MB, 40MB**)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

l menu map



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



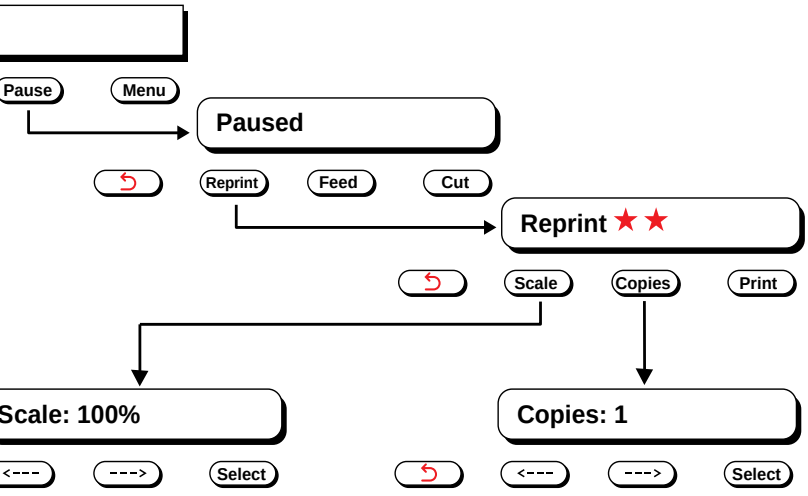
are™ card is installed.

★★ With Extended Features.

3-2429-24

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

u



ed Features.

9480-111

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ction is available in the front panel's Pause menu if an Extended is installed. It allows you to reprint the last PostScript image umber of copies and the scale of the image. For more detailed r to Reprint.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

es overview

several Help Pages that you can print to learn more about the

	Description
anel menu map	Provides a graphical view of the front panel menus.
uration page	Lists general information on printer settings and how the printer is configured.
page	Lists the number of pages printed, installed interface ports, software version numbers, installed RAM memory, the number of fonts, and other useful information.
	Provides a test pattern to diagnose print quality problems. (Available through the Utilities menu.)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

he front panel menu map

menu map provides a convenient navigation aid for quickly
location of menu items.

ays to print the front panel menu map:

e menu map from the front panel

e menu map with PhaserLink software

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

menu map from the front panel

eady message is displayed, press the **Menu** button. The printer
e first item in the menu:

```
Help Pages
<----    ---->      Menu
```

enu button to access the Help Pages. The following message

```
Menu Map
<----    ---->      Print
```

rint button to print a menu map page.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

menu map with PhaserLink software

serShare Status Software User Manual for information on using your
browser to access the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

he configuration page

page is similar to the printer's startup page, but it also provides
ch available port.

al ways to print the configuration page:

configuration page from the front panel

configuration page with a downloadable utility file

configuration page with PhaserLink software

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

configuration page from the front panel

e **Ready** message is displayed, press the **Menu** button. The printer
s the first item in the menu:

```
Help Pages
<----    ---->      Menu
```

e **Menu** button to access the Help Pages. The following message
s:

```
Menu Map
<----    ---->      Print
```

e left arrow (<----) or right arrow (---->) buttons until the
g message appears:

```
Configuration Page
<----    ---->      Print
```

e **Print** button to print a configuration page.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

configuration page with
able utility file

ollowing methods to download a utility file to the printer to print the
ge:

utility file: Configuration Page

e: PRNTCNFG.PS

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ility file: *Configuration Page*

ing QuickDraw GX, you can use the Tektronix Phaser 600 GX driver to
of the configuration page.

tility files from the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM; see Macintosh
r instructions.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk, and
k its icon to start the application.

wnload PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

Configuration Page file from the list, then click **Open**. (This file was
the *Printer Utilities* folder, inside the *PhaserTools* folder.)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

npt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file name
printer output. Use either the default name given in the edit box or
name.

to send the file to the printer.

t is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a dialog
OK to continue.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

: *PRNTCNFG.PS*

nstructions in PC/Windows software to install the printer's software.
y Install to automatically install the software, or select the *Printer*
n in the **Custom Install: Utilities** window.

files in the *PHSR600* subdirectory, inside the *PHSRTOOL* directory
your hard disk by the installer application.

the following methods to send the *PRNTCNFG.PS* file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

configuration page with PhaserLink software

serShare Status Software User Manual for information on using your
browser to access the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

he startup page

ng of the startup page is enabled on power up. However, you can page anytime you need information on the number of pages that ed, the amount of installed memory, the number of fonts in memory, erface ports.

g methods to print a copy of the printer's startup page without er off and on.

detects a non-fatal failure, it automatically prints a startup page iagnostic information regardless of the startup page setting.

al ways to print the startup page:

e startup page from the front panel

e startup page with a downloadable utility file

e startup page with PhaserLink software

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

startup page from the front panel

eady message is displayed, press the **Menu** button. The printer
e first item in the menu:

```
Help Pages
<----    ---->      Menu
```

enu button to access the Help Pages. The following message

```
Menu Map
<----    ---->      Print
```

eft arrow (<----) or right arrow (---->) buttons until the following
ppears:

```
Startup Page
<----    ---->      Print
```

rint button to print a startup page.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

startup page with a downloadable utility file

ollowing methods to download a utility file to the printer to print the

utility file: Print Start Page

e: PRNTSTPG.PS

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ility file: *Print Start Page*

ing QuickDraw GX, you can use the Tektronix Phaser 600 GX driver to
of the printer's startup page.

tility files from the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM; see Macintosh
r instructions.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk, and
k its icon to start the application.

wnload PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

Print Start Page file from the list, then click **Open**. (This file was
the *Printer Utilities* folder, inside the *PhaserTools* folder.)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

npt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file name
printer output. Use either the default name given in the edit box or
name.

to send the file to the printer.

t is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a dialog
OK to continue.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

: *PRNTSTPG.PS*

nstructions in PC/Windows software to install the printer's software.
y Install to automatically install the software, or select the *Printer*
n in the **Custom Install: Utilities** window.

files in the *PHSR600* subdirectory, inside the *PHSRTOOL* directory
your hard disk by the installer application.

the following methods to send the *PRNTSTPG.PS* file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

startup page with PhaserLink software

serShare Status Software User Manual for information on using your
browser to access the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

and disabling the startup page

to have a startup page print each time the printer is turned on or
disable the startup page.

and disable printing of the startup page in several ways:

nd disabling the startup page from the front panel

nd disabling the startup page with a downloadable utility file

nd disabling the startup page with PhaserLink software

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nd disabling the startup page
nt panel

eady message is displayed, press the **Menu** button. The printer
e first item in the setup menu:

```
Help Pages
<----    ---->      Menu
```

eft arrow (<----) or right arrow (---->) buttons, scroll through
ons until the following message appears:

```
Printer Defaults
<----    ---->      Menu
```

lenu button to access the printer defaults settings.

eft arrow (<----) or right arrow (---->) buttons, scroll through the
until the following message appears:

```
Startup Page
<----    ---->      Menu
```


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

lenu button to access the startup page settings.

ght arrow (----) button once for the following message:

```
Startup Page:Off
<----    ---->      Select
```

elect button to disable printing of the startup page.

the top level of the menu, press the ↩ button until the printer e **Ready** message.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nd disabling the startup page with a ble utility file

ollowing methods to download a utility file to the printer to enable or up page:

utility file: LaserWriter Utility

e: STARTPG.PS/NOSTRTPG.PS

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ility file: *LaserWriter Utility*

tility files from the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM; see Macintosh
r instructions.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk, and
k its icon to start the application.

t Startup Page from the **Utilities** menu.

er the **on** or **off** button, then click **OK**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

: *STARTPG.PS/NOSTRTPG.PS*

nstructions in PC/Windows software to install the printer's software.
y Install to automatically install the software, or select the *Printer*
n in the **Custom Install: Utilities** window.

files in the *PHSR600* subdirectory, inside the *PHSRTOOL* directory
your hard disk by the installer application.

of the following files:

e *STARTPG.PS* file to enable printing of the printer's
page.

e *NOSTRTPG.PS* file to disable the printer's startup page.

the following methods to send the desired file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

ation users: Send a file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nd disabling the startup page with PhaserLink

serShare Status Software User Manual for information on using your
browser to access the printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

and disabling front panel menus

rators may choose to limit user access to front panel menus by
tility file to the printer. The “lock” utility file prevents most menu
g displayed on the front panel. The capability of limiting menu
useful when a system administrator needs to retain control of the
s. For example, selections made on the printer’s front panel can
of all users sharing the printer on a network. A system administrator
able the menus so users can only select printing features, such as
s, through their applications on an individual basis. In the protected
have access to print the Test Print, Configuration, and Startup
s printer information.

sed the Menu Short (MENUSHRT.PS) file to disable the front panel
can temporarily re-enable the menus by holding down the printer’s front
button while pressing the ↩ button. You can scroll through the menus
wever, when you press the ↩ button again the front panel returns to the
rm.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

able the front panel menus, use one of these methods:

utility file: Menu Short /Menu Long

e: MENUSHRT.PS/MENULONG.PS

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ility file: *Menu Short /Menu Long*

tility files from the Phaser 600 printer's CD-ROM; see Macintosh
r instructions.

appropriate printer in the **Chooser**.

LaserWriter Utility in the *PhaserTools* folder on your hard disk, and
k its icon to start the application.

wnload PostScript File from the **Utilities** menu.

of the following files from the list, then click **Open**. (These files
ed in the *Printer Utilities* folder, inside the *PhaserTools* folder.)

Menu Short file to disable the printing features menus on the
s front panel.

Menu Long file to expand the printer's front panel to show all

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

npt `Save PostScript output as:` you are asked for a file name
printer output. Use either the default name given in the edit box or
name.

to send the file to the printer.

t is returned by the printer, the *LaserWriter Utility* displays a dialog
OK to continue.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

: *MENUSHRT.PS/MENULONG.PS*

nstructions in PC/Windows software to install the printer's software.
y Install to automatically install the software, or select the *Printer*
n in the **Custom Install: Utilities** window.

files in the *PHSR600* subdirectory, inside the *PHSRTOOL* directory
your hard disk by the installer application.

of the following files:

e *MENUSHRT.PS* file to disable the printing features menus on
ter's front panel.

e *MENULONG.PS* file to expand the printer's front panel to show
us.

the following methods to send the desired file to the printer:

rs: Use the DOS **COPY** command to send the file to the printer.
ws 3.1 users can also use the **Copy** command in the **File**
er.)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ation users: Send the file to the printer as you would any
ript file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ordering Information

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Printer and Tektronix Supplies:
r Each Other®

es are developed and tested as a total *system*: printer, ink, and
stem components work together to produce consistent, high-quality

ktronix supplies for your printer printer to guarantee the best print
eed reliability, and trouble-free printer performance.

maging the printhead, use only Tektronix' Phaser 600 ColorStix® ink
r printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

g your printer

upgrade and accessory kits to expand your printer's capabilities. To its, refer to the information provided in this chapter or the supplies et that was shipped with the printer and contact your local dealer or In the United States, call Tektronix at **1-800-835-6100**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

printer supplies

ist of printer supplies, refer to the supplies information sheet that
h the printer and contact your local dealer or, in the United States,
1-800-835-6100.

nter supplies

	Order number	Description	
ks	016-1453-00	Black	Box of 48
	016-1454-00	Cyan	
	016-1455-00	Magenta	
	016-1456-00	Yellow	
	016-1566-00	Rainbow Pack	6 sticks per color
mooth White Bond	016-1474-00	610 mm x 60.9 m	24 in. x 200 ft.
	016-1475-00	914 mm x 60.9 m	36 in. x 200 ft.
hoto Grade esentation Paper	016-1476-00	610 mm x 45.7 m	24 in. x 150 ft.
	016-1477-00	914 mm x 45.7 m	36 in. x 150 ft.
emium Tracing/ acklit Paper	016-1478-00	914 mm x 45.7 m	36 in. x 150 ft.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nter supplies (cont'd.)

	Order number	Description	
ansparent Film	016-1483-00	914 mm x 22.8 m	36 in. x 75 ft.
acklit Display Film	016-1479-00	914 mm x 15.2 m	36 in. x 50 ft.
epositionable dhesive Display Vinyl	016-1481-00	914 mm x 15.2 m	36 in. x 50 ft.
tist's Presentation anvas	016-1482-00	914 mm x 10.7 m	36 in. x 35 ft.
gh Gloss Lamination m	016-1496-00	940 mm x 76.2 m	37 in. x 250 ft.
	016-1472-00	Contains: ■ 2 fuser wheels ■ 2 foam oiler wheels ■ 2 cutters	
	016-1400-00	Contains ■ 10 pre-soaked alcohol cloths ■ Lint-free cloths ■ 1 plastic bottle (2 oz.) ■ 10 foam swabs ■ 1 cleaning tool	
ol cloths	006-7824-01	Packet of 10	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nter accessories

rder umber	Description
6-1257-00	Media roll holder
8-9396-00	Extra media roll endcap
8-9316-00	Output bin
8-9307-00	Ink Loader
40	Phaser Copystation printer accessory
0-9480-00	*Phaser 600 Color Printer User Manual*
3-2429-00	*Phaser 600 Color Printer Quick Reference Guide*
3-2628-00	*Phaser 600 Color Printer Quick Start Installation*
3-2629-00	*Phaser 600 Color Printer Supplies Information Sheet*
3-2671-00	*Phaser 600 Repacking Instructions*
0-9538-00	*PhaserShare Network Cards and Software System Administrator User Manual*
0-9539-00	*PhaserShare Status Software User Manual*
0-9270-00	*PhaserMatch User Manual*
3-2428-00	Phaser 600 Printer Software diskettes
3-2653-00	Phaser 600 Color Printer CD-ROM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interface cables and adapters

ables and adapters are available through Tektronix or your dealer.
aler for other cables and adapters.

escription	Connectors and cable length
arallel cable onnects the printer's parallel port to a C or workstation parallel port.	36-pin high-density plug to 25-pin DSUB plug; 3 meters (9.84 feet)
arallel/Centronics adapter dapts your system's existing low-density, entronics parallel cable connector to the inter's high-density parallel connector.	Converts 36-pin low-density 1284-B plug to 36-pin high-density 1284-C plug
CSI-2 HD to SCSI-1 LD cable onnects the printer's SCSI port to a hard sk drive or the Phaser Copystation SCSI rt.	50-pin high-density plug to 50-pin low-density plug; 2.0 meters (6.56 feet)
CSI-1 LD to Macintosh SCSI cable ombine with 013-0297-00 to connect the inter's SCSI port to a hard disk drive th Macintosh SCSI 25-pin plug.	50-pin low-density plug to Macintosh SCSI 25-pin plug

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

escription	Connectors and cable length
CSI-1 LD to SCSI-2 HD adapter se with either 012-1465-00 or 2-1299-00 to convert a low-density CSI connection to a high-density SCSI onnection.	Converts 50-pin low-density plug to 50-pin high-density plug
erial (RS-232) Null modem cable onnects the printer's serial port to a PC workstation serial port.	9-socket receptacle to 9-socket receptacle; 1.8 meters (6 feet)
erial (RS-232) Null modem cable onnects the printer's serial port to a PC workstation serial port.	9-socket receptacle to 25-socket receptacle; 1.8 meters (6 feet)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

g your printing system

owing topics for more information:

ts

Features upgrade

grade

re network cards

ystation

t

n

disk

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

S

Description
16-Mbyte SIMM for adding memory (Option 16); see Advantages of adding memory.
32-Mbyte SIMM for adding memory (Option 32); see Advantages of adding memory.
Extended Features SIMM for 22 additional fonts, Copystation support, **Print Preview** feature, and **Reprint** feature.
Extended Features SIMM for Kanji fonts, Copystation support, **Print Preview** feature, and **Reprint** feature.
Ethernet networking card upgrade kit; includes EtherTalk and Novell NetWare protocols (Option P1).
LocalTalk networking card upgrade kit; includes LocalTalk protocol and RS-232 (serial) interface (Option P3).
Token Ring Networking Card upgrade kit (Option P4).
Phaser SCSI hard disk
Media Startup Kit.
Phaser Copystation accessory adds color copying capability to your Tektronix Phaser printer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

eatures upgrade

onfiguration, the Phaser 600 printer offers 8 (or 24 or 40) Mbytes of
7 fonts, support for PhaserMatch™ custom color-matching profiler,
™ software, Tektronix' online control of printer features and access
ation through a standard web browser. The Extended Features
cially suited for workgroups, enhancing the printer's performance in
ys:

Adds 22 Roman fonts for a total of 39 fonts.
Adds 2 Kanji fonts for a total of 17 Roman, 2 Kanji fonts.

ne **Reprint** feature that allows you to reprint a previously printed
different scale and copy count.

ne **Print Preview** feature that lets you preview an image by
at a reduced scale, which takes less time and media than
ull-scale image.

ort for the Phaser Copystation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

t sure which printer configuration you have, press and hold down the
the printer's front panel. Printer information appears on the lower line of

ended Features upgrade for a Phaser 600 printer, use Tektronix
600FX (Roman fonts) or Z600FJ (Kanji fonts).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

grade

printer has 8 Mbytes of standard memory. You can upgrade the
with either a 16 Mbyte-SIMM or a 32 Mbyte-SIMM (for a total of 24
ytes, respectively).

t sure how much memory your printer has, press and hold down the
the printer's front panel. Printer information appears on the lower line of

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

of adding memory

e memory improves throughput, reduces the level of compression, torage for downloadable fonts, and allows printing of the most . Additional memory can also reduce offload time by increasing the fers for the I/O ports.

ble summarizes the memory configurations for the printer printer:

	Total memory	Performance / Benefit
	8 Mbytes	Base configuration.
6-Mbyte SIMM	24 Mbytes	Increases virtual memory, I/O buffers. Improves throughput and performance.
2-Mbyte SIMM	40 Mbytes	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

re network cards

rShare™ network cards offer high-performance network connectivity inter. PhaserShare network cards can be easily installed in your

	Description
	Adds Ethernet interface; includes support for Novell NetWare, EtherTalk, TCP/IP, Telnet and FTP. (Same as Option P1.)
	Adds LocalTalk/Serial interface. (Same as Option P3.)
	Adds Token Ring interface; includes support for Novell NetWare, TokenTalk, TCP/IP, Telnet and FTP. (Same as Option P4.)

etworking the printer

rShare network card to your printer makes it an efficient, sharable e in network environments. Network connections, such as Ethernet, speed improvements compared to the standard parallel connection. Several varieties of PhaserShare cards allow the printer y integrated into popular network configurations. All ports and multaneously active, allowing the printer to be used in mixed

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

pystation

ystation adds easy-to-use, walk-up color copying capability to the
r Printer. Especially useful is the ability to scan a small (for
) image and print the image with the **Scale to Fit** function on the
o Fit automatically scales an image to fit the media installed or
default.

ation, refer to Phaser Copystation. For detailed instructions on
operating the Phaser Copystation, refer to the *Phaser CopyStation*

haser Copystation, use Tektronix order number 4540.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

t

NIX environments, Tektronix offers PhaserPrint™ software.
ware provides fast raster file and screen copy printing to Tektronix
PhaserPrint software also provides a graphical user interface for
trol of Tektronix printer features. PhaserPrint software works with
s native spooling system to print PostScript files and raster files in
Format (SRF), **xwd**, SGI RGB, and other formats.

-ROM contains a demonstration copy of the PhaserPrint software
nstruction guide in the *phaserpr.unx* directory. Refer to Printing from
more information.

aserPrint software, use Tektronix order number 4690F20.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MS environments, Tektronix offers PhaserSym™. PhaserSym is a
ont for DEC OpenVMS VAX, and DEC OpenVMS AXP machines.
itates communication between VMS hosts and Tektronix Phaser
rSym requires that the Phaser printer include Ethernet support.

aserSym, use Tektronix order number 4690F41.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

disk

uipped with an internal 1 Gbyte SCSI hard disk. You can also
x-approved external SCSI hard disk (order number Z350DSK) to the
ort. You can connect one or more external SCSI hard disks to the
onal font storage. Contact Technical Support for recommended
.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REGULATORY INFORMATION

Phaser® 600 Wide-Format Color Printer

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

owing topics for more information:

EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) regulatory standards

of conformity (for 220-230 VAC equipment)

B device (for 100-120 VAC equipment)

afety Data Sheets

ons

/Trademarks

00 Warranty

ty summary

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

n EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) y standards

l apparatus does not exceed the Class B limits for radio noise from digital apparatus set out in the Radio Interference s of the Canadian Department of Communications.

appareil numérique n'émet pas de bruits radioélectriques les limits applicables aux appareils numériques de la classe B dans le Règlement sur le brouillage radioélectrique édicté par le les Communications du Canada.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

on of conformity (for 220-230 VAC equipment)

nd Imaging Division

gon 97070-1000 U.S.A.

our sole responsibility, that the product

printer (Z600)

claration relates, is in conformity with the following standard(s) or document(s):

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Limits and Methods of measurement of radio Interference characteristics of Information Technology Equipment. Class B level.

Limits for harmonic current emissions.

Limitations of voltage fluctuations and flicker.

Electromagnetic compatibility Generic immunity standard Part 1: Residential, Commercial and Light Industry.

IEC1000-4-2:1993
ENV50140:1993
IEC1000-4-4:1003
EN61000-4-11:1993
ENV50141:1993

ision of the Electromagnetic Compatibility Directory 89/336/EEC.

Safety of Information Technology Equipment including Electrical Business Equipment.

isions of the Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ss B device (for 100-120 VAC equipment)

described in this manual generates and uses radio frequency
ot installed and used properly in strict accordance with Tektronix'
ay cause interference with radio and television reception.

has been tested and verified to comply with the limits for a Class B
ursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to
ble protection against harmful interferences in a residential
s equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency
ot installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause
nce to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that
not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause
nce to radio or television reception, which can be determined by
pment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the
one of more of the following measures:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

r relocate the receiving antenna.

he separation between the equipment and receiver.

he equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to receiver is connected.

e dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

N G

modifications not expressly approved by Tektronix can affect emission and could void the user's authority to operate this product. To ensure mpliance, use shielded interface cables.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Data Sheets

ment of environmental resources protects the well-being of our tomers, shareholders, and the communities we are a part of

ishes and maintains sound environmental management practices to goal and to assure compliance with the laws, regulations, and sponsible governmental authorities wherever Tektronix and its erate.

porated is complying with government regulations by providing Data Sheets for this product.

nd Imaging Division
porated

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

nk

RODUCT IDENTIFICATION

	Tektronix Part No.
Black	016-1453-00
Cyan	016-1454-00
Magenta	016-1455-00
Yellow	016-1456-00

ektronix Phaser® 600 printers

FORMATION ON INGREDIENTS

es

genta, and yellow dyes

ntity of ingredients, and their percentage composition, is withheld as

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AZARDS IDENTIFICATION

POSURE: Skin
ALTH EFFECTS

cts: None expected. See section 11 for toxicology test information.
cts: None expected
y: None of the ingredients of this product are listed as carcinogens NTP, or IARC.

MPTOMS OF EXPOSURE: None expected
DITIONS AGGRAVATED BY EXPOSURE: None expected

RST AID MEASURES

nlikely. If any particles get into eye, flush thoroughly with water.
n thoroughly with soap and water.
lot applicable
t applicable

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RE FIGHTING MEASURES

Above 200°F (NFPA class 3B)
ION HAZARDS: These inks will burn. No unusual hazards are

CCIDENTAL RELEASE MEASURES

: Not applicable

ANDLING AND STORAGE

special precautions
d high temperatures

XPOSURE CONTROL - PERSONAL PROTECTION

DELINES: None established
CONTROLS/PERSONAL PROTECTION: No special protection
used as intended.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HYSICAL AND CHEMICAL PROPERTIES

ODOR: Waxy solid. Black, blue, red, or yellow in color. Odorless.
ot water soluble

STABILITY AND REACTIVITY

ble
TY WITH OTHER MATERIALS: None
OLYMERIZATION: Will not occur

OXICOLOGICAL INFORMATION

oxic, as determined by standard laboratory tests for acute oral

N: Not a primary skin irritant, as determined by standard laboratory

ATION: Not a skin sensitizer, as determined by standard laboratory

CITY: No ingredients of this product are listed as carcinogens by
ARC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ECOLOGICAL INFORMATION

ct

DISPOSAL CONSIDERATIONS

not a hazardous waste as specified in 40CFR261. TCLP below
e levels set by EPA. Manage and dispose of waste in accordance
state, and local regulations.

RANSPORT INFORMATION

lated
Sub. 3 - Ink, Printing, N.O.I., Class 55.

REGULATORY INFORMATION

onents of this material are listed on the TSCA Inventory.
ROPOSITION 65: Not listed.
elow hazardous waste levels set by EPA
Not reportable

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OTHER INFORMATION

tion date: 9/12/96
rporate Environmental, Health, and Safety/ JMP.

porated

0
gon 97077
on: 503-627-7255

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tions

C to 32° C (59° F to 90° F)
y: 20º C to 25º C (68º F to 77º F)
C to +60° C (–22° F to +140° F)

to 80% Relative Humidity, non-condensing
y: 30% to 70% Relative Humidity, non-condensing
10% to 95% Relative Humidity, non-condensing

2500 m (8,000 ft.) at 25˚ C.
0 to 55,000 m (18,000 ft.)

e ranges
10 VAC nominal
220 VAC nominal

ge

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ps
mps
sible)

ption

	Average power
g	800 W
	220 W

standard unit

m (40.87 in.)
(26.39 in.)
n (66.93 in.)

With ink loader: 1236 mm (48.66 in.)
With output bin: 737 mm (29 in.)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ssions standards

L 1950 Information Technology Equipment.

CSA Standard C22.2 No. 950-M 89, Safety of Information
y Equipment, Including Electrical Business Equipment.

sed: EN60950.

mpliant computing device pursuant to sub-part J of Part 15 of

to EC EN55022, EN61000-3-2, EN61000-3-3, EN50082-1; 1992.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ts/Trademarks

ronix, Inc. Unpublished rights reserved under the copyright laws of
s.

ser®, ColorStix®, and Made For Each Other® are registered
ektronix, Inc. TekColor™, PhaserShare™, PhaserTools™,
PhaserPrint™, PhaserSym™, and PhaserLink™ are trademarks of
TekColor Care℠ is a service mark of Tektronix, Inc.

cript®, IntelliSelect™, and Acrobat® are trademarks of Adobe
orated which may be registered in certain jurisdictions. Adobe
ns technology is a trademark of Adobe Systems, Incorporated or its
d may be registered in certain jurisdictions.

riter®, LocalTalk®, Macintosh®, and TrueType2® are registered
pple Computer, Incorporated.

ca™, and Palatino™ are trademarks of Linotype-Hell AG and/or its

d Gothic, ITC Bookman, ITC Zapf Chancery and ITC Zapf Dingbats
ademarks of International Typeface Corporation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windows® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

Ware® is a registered trademark of Novell, Inc.

tered trademark in the United States and other countries, licensed
ugh X/Open Company Ltd.

gistered trademark of SPARC International, Incorporated.
is a trademark of SPARC International, Incorporated, licensed
un Microsystems, Incorporated.

osystems®, and Sun Microsystems Computer Corporation® are
marks of Sun Microsystems, Incorporated.

ains an implementation of the LZW algorithm licensed under U.S.
2.

egistered trademark of Xerox Corporation.

s a registered trademark of FTP Software, Incorporated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ors generated by the Phaser 600 Color Printer are four- and/or
ess simulations and may not match PANTONE-identified solid color
current PANTONE Color Reference Manuals for accurate colors.

simulations are only obtainable on these products when driven by
e-licensed software packages. Contact Pantone, Inc. for a current
censees. © Pantone, Inc., 1988.

oted herein are either the property of Tektronix, Inc., Pantone, Inc.,
ve companies.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

600 Warranty

SITE WARRANTY IS STANDARD, WITH OPTIONAL PLANS FOR
VICE.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

fety summary

al:

Conditions that can result in damage to the product.

: Conditions that can result in personal injury or loss of life.

ore than 250 volts RMS between the supply conductors or between nductor and ground. Use only the specified power cord and r to a qualified service technician for changes to the cord or

roduct:

hock by contacting a qualified service technician to replace fuses ct. Do not operate without the covers and panels properly installed. n an atmosphere of explosive gases.

ons:

tion instructions carefully before you plug the product into a power

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

uct:

A personal injury hazard exists that may not be apparent. For
a panel may cover the hazardous area. Also applies to a hazard
y including the product itself.

A personal injury hazard exists in the area where you see the

t:

power plug by pulling the plug, not the cord. Disconnect the power
r cord or plug is frayed or otherwise damaged, if you spill anything
product is exposed to any excess moisture, if product is dropped or
suspect that the product needs servicing or repair, and whenever
oduct.

duct:

ire power cord (with grounding prong) into grounded AC outlets
ry, contact a licensed electrician to install a properly grounded

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

rked on product:

age: Use caution. Refer to the manual(s) for information:

(earth) terminal: Sharp object. Use caution.

aution.

N G

ct loses the ground connection, usage of knobs and controls (and other parts) can cause an electrical shock. Electrical product may be misused.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INDEX

731
12
file 471
8
197
color library
293
19
ance 464
h utility

ADVMEDIA.PS, PC utility file 464
AIS.PS, PC utility file 526
alcohol, isopropyl, cleaning with 538
America Online 581
Apple LaserWriter 8 driver
    setting up 76
    using 140
AppleTalk printer name 443
applications
    color adjusting 217
    printing from 149
    QuickDraw GX 365
automated fax systems 585
automated information system (HAL) 148, 149
automatic cutting 226
automatic language selection 181
automatic scaling, Copystation 246

B

back tension blade, cleaning 546
before powering up 33
BIDIR.PS, PC utility file 508
bi-directional status reporting, enabling and disabling 508
Bulletin Board Service (BBS) 581

C

cable ties, removing 20
cables
    ordering 732
    SCSI 486
caring for your printer 535
casters (wheels)
    about 16
    locking 32
CD-ROM 12
change printer's name 443, 445
Chooser
    printer doesn't appear 609
    selecting a driver 600
CIE colors 198
clamp rollers, cleaning 552
cleaning
    back tension blade 546
    clamp rollers 552
    drum 544
    exit rollers 553, 561
    front panel setting 547
    fuser 553
    isopropyl alcohol 538
    kit contents 538
    occasional cleaning 545
    paper clamp 546

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2
sh utility
256
ng 197
196
ns 215
2
h 264
205
5
217
152
82

no corrections 202
selecting 155
selecting the best 197
Simulate Display 204
SNAP Press 205
SWOP Press 205
use printer setting 212
Vivid Color 203
with an unsupported driver 218
with printer on a network 216
Color Printer Information Server 583
email address 583
information types available 583
ColorStix ink sticks 537
ordering 729
ColorSync, using 277
commands, DOS
COPY command, using 441
MODE command, using 396
Commercial Press color correction
description 205
selecting from the front panel 152
selecting in a Macintosh driver 125
selecting in a Windows driver 83
using a utility file 477
communication ports 110
CompuServe 581
CONFIG.PS, PC utility file 518
configuration descriptions 2

configuration page 596
printing 699
from a Macintosh 702
from a PC 704
from the front panel 700
configuring a serial port (PC) 473
connecting power 34
connecting printer ports 28
connections
network 31
parallel cables 30
power 32
SCSI port 482
Control-D, PC utility files 471
copyright information 762
Copystation 13, 242
automatic scaling 246
custom scaling 246
media size interactions 248
SCSI ID 29
CorelDRAW!, PANTONE color library file
PC 300
correcting printed colors 197
CTRLD.PS, PC utility file 471
Custom Install option 47
custom page sizes 241
custom profiles 49, 70
custom scaling, Copystation 246
Cut Media, Macintosh utility files 478
CUTJOB.PS, PC utility file 478
CUTNEVER.PS, PC utility file 478
CUTNOW.PS, PC utility file 478

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ile 478

748
raw GX
372
tures for 371
file 473
596

10
s 414
g 204

ng 441
ing 396

ervers
430
29

downloading files to the printer
DOS 441
LaserWriter Utility 434
Macintosh 434
PC 438
QuickDraw GX driver 381, 437
Windows 3.1 439
Windows 95 440
downloading fonts 185
drivers
installing
DOS 400
Macintosh 69
Windows 48
using
DOS 400
Macintosh 139
QuickDraw GX 371
Windows 3.1 115
Windows 95 101, 105
Windows NT 4.0 119
drum, cleaning 544

E

Easy Install option 47
EasyCopy/X, workstation software 144, 147, 407
empty the waste bin 569
enabling and disabling the startup page 713
Enhanced print quality mode 154
Enhanced Quality, Macintosh utility files 477
ENHANCED.PS, PC utility file 477
entrance jam 670
error
codes and messages 592
handlers, PostScript 635
indicator, front panel 35
PostScript 630
Ethernet
ordering 735
PhaserShare card and protocols 31
problems 609
EtherTalk printer name 445
EuroHAL, automated fax system 582, 588
Euroscale Press color correction
description 205
selecting from the front panel 152
selecting in a Macintosh driver 125
selecting in a Windows driver 83
using a utility file 477
exit cover, opening 543, 556
exit jam 670
exit rollers, cleaning 553, 561
Extended Features
fonts 184
option 2
upgrade, ordering 736
external hard disk, SCSI ID 29
extracting files from *unix.tar* 421

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

623
585
40

ntosh 190
192
utility file 190

482
3 183

184
nts 187
6
on 183

192
intosh utility

95

or library file

file 496

buttons 686
cleaning 547
diagnosing problems 599
display 689
Help Pages 597
indicators 683, 685
menu map 691
printing 696
menus 720
messages 599
messages and error codes 592
selecting a language 37
timeout 599
ftp server 581
downloading files from 430
FUSECOLD.PS, PC utility file 478
FUSEHOT.PS, PC utility file 478
FUSENONE.PS, PC utility file 478
fuser jam 670
fuser kit
contents 553
ordering 730
removing components 557
fuser shuttle, cleaning 553, 559
Fusing Mode 222
Fusing, Macintosh utility files 478

G

getting the best results 644
gray scale, printing in 211

H

HAL, automated fax
system 148, 149, 586
halftone screens 646
handling media 658
hard disk, SCSI 482
connecting multiple disks 491
formatting 493
from a Macintosh 495
from a PC 496
ID numbers 29
initializing 497
from a Macintosh 498
from a PC 499
selecting 483
Help Pages
menu map 691
printing 695
startup page 36
types available 695
host color correction, Windows 95 282
hotline, technical support 581
HP-GL 181
language 522
pen colors 530
HPGL.PS, PC utility file 525
HPGLPENS.PS, PC utility file 530
HPGLTEST.PLT, PC utility file 528
HSB Sampler, Macintosh utility file 256
HSB.PS, PC utility file 256

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

acintosh utility

acintosh utility

20

1, 685
erLink 5
e 499
cintosh utility

sk
98

35

24

older 42

installation
inventory 11
screen fonts 187
software 46
tasks 10
unpacking 11
interactive mode, front panel 687
interface ports 28
internal jam 670
Internet 583
inventory 11
isopropyl alcohol, cleaning with 538

J

job pipelining 460
job timeout 517

L

laminating 251
landscape orientation 173
language modes
checking 608
default 181
HP-GL 522
PostScript 522
printer 514
language, front panel selection 37
LaserWriter Utility, using 434
legal information 762
leveling legs, adjusting 32
loading
cut-sheet media 176
ink 24
roll media 39, 658
LocalTalk
printer name 443, 445
problems 609
LPT port
setting up 396

M

Macintosh printer drivers,
selecting 124
Macintosh screen fonts 187
Macintosh utility files 434
Advance Media 464
CMYK Sampler 256
Configuration Page 702
Cut Media 478
Enhanced Quality 477
Font Sampler 190
Format Printer Disk 495
Fusing 478
HSB Sampler 256
Image Smoothing Off 478
Image Smoothing On 478
Initialize Printer Disk 498
installing 427
Menu Long 722
Menu Short 722
Mirror Print Off 478

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

01

9
213
13
58

01

77
35
537, 596

ets

612, 670

jams
clearing 599
moving the fuser 674
moving the printhead 673
loading
cut-sheet media 176
paper 39
roll media 39, 658
roll, removing 542
skewing 613
stiffness 172
thickness 171
types 2
Media Cutting 226
Media Fusing 222
memory
advantages of upgrading 738
order numbers 738
Menu Long, Macintosh utility file 722
menu map 691
printing 696
Menu Short, Macintosh utility file 722
MENULONG.PS, PC utility file 724
MENUSHRT.PS, PC utility file 724
Microsoft PostScript driver
setting up 54
MIROROFF.PS, PC utility file 478
Mirror Print 228
Mirror Print Off, Macintosh utility files 478
Mirror Print On, Macintosh utility files 478
MIRRORON.PS, PC utility file 478
MODE command, using 396
Monochrome color correction
description 211
selecting from the front panel 152
selecting in a Macintosh driver 125
selecting in a Windows driver 83
using a utility file 477
mounting PC diskette 414
moving the printer 16, 575
MSDS, ink 753

N

network
connections 31
order numbers 740
rear panel ports 31
printing 655
utilities software 421
No Color Correction color correction
description 202
selecting from the front panel 152
selecting in a Macintosh driver 125
selecting in a Windows driver 83
using a utility file 477
No Sys/Start Job, Macintosh utility file 501
NOSTRTPG.PS, PC utility file 718
NOSYSTRT.PS, PC utility file 503

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

page sizes, custom 241
PageMaker
PageMaker 5.0, PANTONE color library file
Macintosh 295
PC 299
PageMaker 6.0, PANTONE color library file
Macintosh 296
PANTONE
color charts
printing from a Macintosh 301
printing from a PC 301
Colors, printing 644
printer files
installing
Macintosh 288
PC 289
using
Macintosh 286
PC 286
paper
handling 658
loading 39
ordering 729
paper clamp, cleaning 546
paper guides, cleaning 540
paper roll holder 40
paper roll, loading 41
parallel
cables 30
cables, ordering 732
port, connecting 30
port, default language 181
parallel port
computer, see *LPT port*
disabling timeouts 507
MODE command 507
pinout 510
Pause menu, front panel 236, 687, 693
PC DOS, printing from 393
PC utility files
ADDCTRLD.BAT 471
ADVMEDIA.PS 464
AIS.PS 526
BIDIR.PS 508
CMYK.PS 256
CONFIG.PS 518
CTRLD.PS 471
CUTJOB.PS 478
CUTNEVER.PS 478
CUTNOW.PS 478
CUTPAGE.PS 478
DEVPARAM.PS 473
ENHANCED.PS 477
FONTS.PS 192
FRMTDISK.PS 496
FUSECOLD.PS 478
FUSEHOT.PS 478
FUSENONE.PS 478
HPGL.PS 525
HPGLPENS.PS 530

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SMOTHOFF.PS 478
STANDARD.PS 477
SYSTART.PS 503
TEKEHAND.PS 635
UNIDIR.PS 508
PC/NFS 605
PC/Windows software 48
Pen colors, HP-GL 530
peripheral devices 29
turning on the power 34
Phaser 600 driver
setting up 73
using 138
Phaser 600 GX driver
setting up 75
using 141
Phaser 600 Quick Reference Guide 596, 731
Phaser Copystation 13
order number 741
using with a Phaser 600 242
PhaserLink software 5, 151
PhaserMatch, installing
Macintosh 70
Windows 49
PhaserPrint for UNIX 742
for workstations 144, 629
order number 742
software for workstations 405
PhaserPrint Photoshop plug-in 71, 319
installing for Macintosh 322
installing for Windows 323
selecting options 328
starting the plug-in 326
PhaserShare cards 31
advantages of networking 740
configuring 31
manuals 731
order numbers 740
PhaserSym
capabilities 743
order number 743
software for workstations 144, 407
Photoshop
Macintosh plug-in 319
Windows plug-in 319
PIPE_OFF.PS, PC utility file 460
PIPE_ON.PS, PC utility file 460
Pipelining Off, Macintosh utility file 460
Pipelining On, Macintosh utility file 460
pipelining, print jobs 460
Plug-in, Adobe Photoshop, using 319
portrait orientation 173
ports
computer 396
setting up PC ports for DOS 395
ports, printer
parallel 30
PhaserShare 31
speed 621
ports, see communication ports

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6
635

ver 116
er 103, 107

3, 601

ctions 150
y modes 150

y modes 150

n 245

y modes 154

printer
  features
    selecting from a Macintosh driver 125
    selecting from a utility file 477
    selecting from a Windows driver 83
    selecting from the front panel 152
  front panel
    menus 720
  languages
    HP-GL 514
    PCL5 514
    PostScript 514
  profile for ColorSync 277
  renaming 443, 445
  resetting 447
  startup page
    enable or disable 713
    printing 706
  status reporting
    bi-directional interface 508
printer configuration information 654
printer control
  PhaserLink 5
  selecting features 151
printer drivers
  installing
    DOS 400
    Macintosh 69
    Windows 48
  using
    DOS 400
    Windows 3.1 115
    Windows 95 101, 105
    Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51 118
    Windows NT 4.0 119
printer drivers, using
  Macintosh 139
printer information, front panel 690
printer languages 187
  default 181
printer ports, connecting 28
printer service 581
printer software on CD-ROM 51
printer supplies 729
PRINTER.INF, updating Windows NT driver 118
printhead cleaning 567
printing
  configuration page 699
  features 4, 179
  features, special 221
  from a Macintosh 124
  from a PC 82
  from applications 149
  languages 181
  menu map 696
  on a network 655
  PANTONE Colors 644
  problems 606
  startup page 706
  time 623
  timeout 610

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ctions 205
file 704
file 711
596
581
e 524
529
ript
437
364
er 365
10, 15
ntosh utility
osh utility
file 213
le 213
14
5
ile 458
Rendering Intents, Macintosh utility files 458
RENDPER.PS, PC utility file 458
RENDREL.PS, PC utility file 458
RENDSAT.PS, PC utility file 458
repacking the printer 575, 578, 579
Reprint 4, 240
RESET.PS, PC utility file 447
resetting the printer
from a Macintosh 447
from a PC 450
resident typefaces 183
RGB Sampler, Macintosh utility file 256
RGB.PS, PC utility file 256
RIP (Raster Image Processor) 3
ROTAT180.PS, PC utility file 478
ROTAT270.PS, PC utility file 478
ROTATE90.PS, PC utility file 478
ROTATENO.PS, PC utility file 478

S

Scale to Fit in Pause menu 236
screen fonts, installing 187
SCREENON.PS, PC utility file 649
SCRENOFF.PS, PC utility file 649
SCSI hard disk 482
connecting multiple disks 491
connecting single disk 490
devices 29
formatting 493
from a Macintosh 495
from a PC 496
ID numbers 29
initializing 497
from a Macintosh 498
from a PC 499
selecting 483
SCSI port
connecting external font disk 482
connecting Phaser Copystation 482
selecting a Macintosh driver to install 70
selecting a print-quality mode 154
selecting a Windows driver to install 49
selecting page sizes in Windows applications 650
self-tests 35
serial port
configuring (PC) 473
parameter values 476
server, ftp, Tektronix
downloading files from 430
service 581
Setscreen Off, Macintosh utility file 647
Setscreen On, Macintosh utility file 647
setting up drivers
Apple LaserWriter 8.x 76
Macintosh Adobe PSPrinter 74
Macintosh Phaser 600 driver 73
QuickDraw GX 75

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3.51 58

g 21

0

, CMYK and

rrection

nt panel 152
osh driver 125
ws driver 83
7
y file 478
file 478
tion 205

nt panel 152
osh driver 125
ws driver 83
7

g 596
221

specifications 759
standard configuration 2
  fonts 183
Standard print quality mode 154
Standard Quality, Macintosh utility files 477
STANDARD.PS, PC utility file 477
starter paper roll 39
startup page 36, 669
  enable or disable 713
    from a Macintosh 717
    from a PC 718
    from the front panel 714
  printing 706
    from a Macintosh 709
    from a PC 711
    from the front panel 707
  prints when disabled 669
  reports error message 669
status reporting
  bi-directional interface 508
streaks or spots on prints 616
supplies and accessories 618, 726
  Made For Each Other® 727
  ordering 729
surge protector 33
SWOP Press color correction
  description 205
  selecting from the front panel 152
  Selecting in a Macintosh driver 125
  Selecting in a Windows driver 83
  using a utility file 477
symptoms and solutions 596
  Phaser 600 Quick Reference Guide 596
Sys/Start Job, enable or disable 500
  from a Macintosh 501
  from a PC 503
SYSTART.PS, PC utility file 503

T

technical support 581
Tek Error Handler, using
  from a Macintosh 635
  from a PC 635
TekColor
  corrections 197
  options 155
TEKEHAND.PS, PC utility file 635
Tektronix
  Color Printer Information Server 430
  ftp server
    downloading files from 430
Tektronix Bulletin Board Service (BBS) 78, 581
Tektronix driver for Windows 3.1
  setting up 56
  using 109
test print 597
thumbnail image in **Print Preview** 235

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

101, 105, 116
er 111
nd
31
62
g 18
116
05
g 542
15
ts instead of
670
11, 612
4
ut file doesn't
ish 610
ar in the
09
when
69
6

TrueType fonts 6, 183, 186
turning on the printer 32, 33, 34
type of media 170

U

UNIDIR.PS, PC utility file 508
UNIX workstations 145
    installing printer software 78
unpacking 10, 11, 15
upgrade kits 735
    Ethernet 735
    LocalTalk support 735
    serial support 735
Use Printer Setting color correction
    description 212
used ink 569
using color 195, 200
using EuroHAL 582
using Macintosh drivers
    Adobe PSPrinter 139
    Apple LaserWriter 8.x 140
    Phaser 600 driver 138
    QuickDraw GX 141
using Windows 3.1 drivers
    Adobe PostScript 115
    Tektronix driver 109
using Windows 95 drivers
    AdobePS 4 105
    MS PostScript 101
using Windows NT drivers
    Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51 118
    Windows NT 4.0 119
utilities diskettes 10
utility files
    Macintosh
        installing 427
        using 434
    PC
        installing 428
        using 438
    workstation
        downloading 78

V

Vivid Color color correction
    selecting from the front panel 152
    selecting in a Macintosh driver 125
    selecting in a Windows driver 83
    using a utility file 477
VMS workstations 147

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

35

6

116

r fonts 653
g page

Windows 95 driver
Details tab 101, 105
Device Options tab 103, 106
Graphics tab 102, 106
Paper tab 102, 106
PostScript Header 103, 107
PostScript tab 103, 107
problems with printer fonts 653
timeouts 101, 105, 116, 639
using 101, 105, 115
Windows 95 software
installing 51
setting up 54
Windows NT 3.5 and 3.51
driver, using 118
setting up a driver 58
Windows NT 4.0
driver, using 119
setting up a driver 63
setting up on a network 65
workstation software
EasyCopy/X 147, 407
installing 78
PhaserPrint for
UNIX 146, 406, 742
PhaserSym 407
World Wide Web 581
downloading files from 429

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine